

Energy Management Working Group
Internet Draft
Intended status: Informational
Expires: October 19, 2013

Brad Schoening
Independent Consultant
Mouli Chandramouli
Cisco Systems Inc.
Bruce Nordman
Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory
April 19, 2013

Energy Management (EMAN) Applicability Statement
draft-ietf-eman-applicability-statement-03

Abstract

The objective of Energy Management (EMAN) is to provide an energy management framework for networked devices. This document presents the applicability of the EMAN framework to a variety of scenarios. This document lists use cases and target devices that can potentially implement the EMAN framework and associated SNMP MIB modules. These use cases are useful for identifying requirements for the framework and MIBs. Further, we describe the relationship of the EMAN framework to relevant other energy monitoring standards and architectures.

Status of this Memo

This Internet-Draft is submitted to IETF in full conformance with the provisions of BCP 78 and BCP 79.

Internet-Drafts are working documents of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), its areas, and its working groups. Note that other groups may also distribute working documents as Internet-Drafts.

Internet-Drafts are draft documents valid for a maximum of six months and may be updated, replaced, or obsoleted by other documents at any time. It is inappropriate to use Internet-Drafts as reference material or to cite them other than as "work in progress."

The list of current Internet-Drafts can be accessed at
<http://www.ietf.org/ietf/lid-abstracts.txt>

The list of Internet-Draft Shadow Directories can be accessed at
<http://www.ietf.org/shadow.html>

Expires October 19, 2013

[Page 1]

Copyright Notice

Copyright (c) 2013 IETF Trust and the persons identified as the document authors. All rights reserved.

This document is subject to BCP 78 and the IETF Trust's Legal Provisions Relating to IETF Documents (<http://trustee.ietf.org/license-info>) in effect on the date of publication of this document. Please review these documents carefully, as they describe your rights and restrictions with respect to this document. Code Components extracted from this document must include Simplified BSD License text as described in Section 4.e of the Trust Legal Provisions and are provided without warranty as described in the Simplified BSD License.

Table of Contents

1. Introduction	3
1.1. Energy Management Overview	4
1.2. EMAN Document Overview	4
1.3. Energy Measurement	5
1.4. Energy Management	5
1.5. EMAN Framework Application	6
2. Scenarios and Target Devices	7
2.1. Network Infrastructure Energy Objects	7
2.2. Devices Powered by and Connected to a Network Device ...	8
2.3. Devices Connected to a Network	9
2.4. Power Meters	10
2.5. Mid-level Managers	11
2.6. Non-residential Building System Gateways	11
2.7. Home Energy Gateways	12
2.8. Data Center Devices	13
2.9. Energy Storage Devices	14
2.10. Industrial Automation Networks	15
2.11. Printers	15
2.12. Off-Grid Devices	16
2.13. Demand Response	17
2.14. Power Capping	17
3. Use Case Patterns	18
3.1. Metering	18
3.2. Metering and Control	18
3.3. Power Supply, Metering and Control	18
3.4. Multiple Power Sources	18

Internet-Draft	EMAN Applicability Statement	April 2013
4.	Relationship of EMAN to other Standards	19
4.1.	Data Model and Reporting	19
4.1.1.	IEC - CIM	19
4.1.2.	DMTF	19
4.1.3.	ODVA	21
4.1.4.	Ecma SDC	21
4.1.5.	PWG	22
4.1.6.	ASHRAE	22
4.1.7.	ZigBee	23
4.2.	Measurement	23
4.2.1.	ANSI C12	24
4.2.2.	IEC 62301	24
4.3.	Other	24
4.3.1.	ISO	24
4.3.2.	Energy Star	25
4.3.3.	Smart Grid	25
5.	Limitations	26
6.	Security Considerations	26
7.	IANA Considerations	27
8.	Acknowledgements	27
9.	References	27
9.1.	Normative References	27
9.2.	Informative References	27

1. Introduction

The focus of the Energy Management (EMAN) framework is energy monitoring and management of energy objects [EMAN-DEF]. The scope of devices considered are network equipment and its components, and devices connected directly or indirectly to the network. The EMAN framework enables monitoring (heterogeneous devices to report their energy consumption) and, if permissible, control. There are multiple scenarios where this is desirable, particularly considering the increased importance of limiting consumption of finite energy resources and reducing operational expenses.

The EMAN framework [EMAN-FRAMEWORK] describes how energy information can be retrieved from IP-enabled devices using Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), specifically, Management Information Base (MIBs) for SNMP.

This document describes typical applications of the EMAN framework, as well as its opportunities and limitations. It also reviews other standards that are similar in part to EMAN

but address different domains. This document describes how those other standards relate to the EMAN framework.

Expires October 19, 2013

[Page 3]

The rest of the document is organized as follows. Section 2 contains a list of use cases or network scenarios that EMAN addresses. Section 3 contains an abstraction of the use case scenarios to distinct patterns. Section 4 deals with other standards related to EMAN and applicable to EMAN.

1.1. Energy Management Overview

EMAN addresses the electrical energy consumed by devices connected to a network. A first step to increase the energy efficiency in network equipment and devices attached to the network is to enable energy objects to report their energy usage over time. The EMAN framework addresses this problem with an information model for electrical equipment: energy object identification, energy object context, power measurement and power characteristics.

The EMAN drafts define SNMP MIB modules based on the information model. By implementing the SNMP MIB modules, any energy object can report its energy consumption according to the information model. While the MIB drafts contain MIB modules, the information model can be adapted to other mechanisms such as YANG modules, NETCONF etc.

It is important to distinguish energy objects that can only report their own energy usage from devices that can also collect and aggregate energy usage of other energy objects.

Target devices and scenarios considered for energy management are presented in Section 2 with detailed examples.

1.2. EMAN Document Overview

The EMAN working group charter called for producing a series of Internet standard drafts in the area of energy management. The following drafts were created by the working group.

Applicability Statement [EMAN-AS] this document presents use cases and scenarios for energy management. In addition, other relevant energy standards and architectures are discussed.

Requirements [EMAN-REQ] this document presents requirements of energy management and the scope of the devices considered.

Internet-Draft EMAN Applicability Statement April 2013
Framework [EMAN-FRAMEWORK] This document defines a framework
for providing energy management for devices within or
connected to communication networks.

Energy-Aware MIB [EMAN-AWARE-MIB] This document proposes a MIB
module that characterizes a device identity, context and
relationships to other entities.

Monitoring MIB [EMAN-MONITORING-MIB] This document defines a
MIB module for monitoring the power and energy consumption of
a device. The MIB module contains an optional module for
metrics associated with power characteristics.

Battery MIB [EMAN-BATTERY-MIB] This document contains a MIB
module for monitoring characteristics of an internal battery.

Energy Management Terminology [EMAN-DEF] This document lists
the definitions for the common terms used in the Energy
Management Working Group.

1.3. Energy Measurement

More and more devices are able to measure and report their own
energy consumption. Smart power strips and some Power over
Ethernet (PoE) switches can meter consumption of connected
devices. However, when managed and reported through proprietary
means, this information is minimally useful at the enterprise
level.

The primary goal of the EMAN MIBs is to enable reporting and
management within a standard framework that is applicable to a
wide variety of end devices, meters, and proxies. This enables
a management system to know who's consuming what, when, and how
at any time by leveraging existing networks, across various
equipment, in a unified and consistent manner.

Given that an energy object can consume energy and/or provide
energy to other devices, there are three types of energy
measurement: energy input to a device, energy supplied to other
devices, and net (resultant) energy consumed (the difference
between energy input and provided).

1.4. Energy Management

Beyond energy monitoring, the EMAN framework provides mechanisms
for energy control.

There are many cases where reducing energy consumption of devices is desirable, such as when the device utilization is low or when the electricity is expensive or in short supply.

In some cases, energy control requires considering the energy object context. For instance, in a building during non-business hours: usually not all phones would be turned off to keep some phones available in case of emergency; and office cooling is usually not turned off totally, but the comfort level is reduced.

Energy object control requires flexibility and support for different policies and mechanisms: from centralized management with a network management station, to autonomous management by individual devices, and alignment with dynamic demand-response mechanisms.

The EMAN framework can be used as a tool for the demand/response scenario where in response to time-of-day fluctuation of energy costs or possible energy shortages, it is possible to respond and reduce the energy consumption for the network devices, effectively changing its power state.

1.5. EMAN Framework Application

A Network Management System (NMS) is the entity that requests information from compatible devices using SNMP protocol. An NMS implements many network management functions, e.g. security management, or identity management. An NMS that deals exclusively with energy is called an Energy Management System (EnMS). It may be limited to monitoring energy use, or it may also implement control functions. An EnMS collects energy information for devices in the network.

Energy management can be implemented by extending existing SNMP support to the EMAN specific MIBs. SNMP provides an industry proven and well-known mechanism to discover, secure, measure, and control SNMP-enabled end devices. The EMAN framework provides an information and data model to unify access to a large range of devices.

The scope of the target devices and the network scenarios considered for energy management are listed in Section 2.

In this section a selection of scenarios for energy management are presented. The fundamental objective of the use cases is to list important network scenarios that the EMAN framework should solve. These use cases then drive the requirements for the EMAN framework.

Each scenario lists target devices for which the energy management framework can be applied, how the reported-on devices are powered, and how the reporting is accomplished. While there is some overlap between some of the use cases, the use cases illustrate network scenarios that the EMAN framework supports.

2.1. Network Infrastructure Energy Objects

This scenario covers network devices and their components. Power management of energy objects is a fundamental requirement of energy management of networks.

It can be important to monitor the energy consumption and possibly manage the power state of these devices at a granularity level finer than just the entire device. For these devices, the chassis draws power from one or more sources and feeds all its internal components. It is highly desirable to have monitoring available for individual components, such as line cards, processors, and disk drives as well as peripherals such as USB devices.

As an illustrative example, consider a switch with the following grouping of sub-entities for which energy management could be useful.

- . physical view: chassis (or stack), line cards, service modules of the switch.
- . component view: CPU, ASICs, fans, power supply, ports (single port and port groups), storage and memory.

The ENTITY-MIB provides the containment tree framework, for uniquely identifying the physical sub-components of network devices. A component can be an Energy Object and the ENTITY-MIB containment tree expresses if one Energy Object belongs to another Energy Object (e.g. a line-card Energy Object contained in a chassis Energy Object). The table entPhysicalContainsTable which has the index of entPhysicalChildIndex and the MIB object entPhysicalContainedIn which points to the containing entity.

The essential properties of this use case are:

- . Target devices: network devices such as routers and switches as well as their components.
- . How powered: typically by a Power Distribution Unit (PDU) on a rack or from a wall outlet. The components of a device are powered by the device chassis.
- . Reporting: direct power measurement can be performed at a device level. Components can report their power consumption directly or the chassis/device that can report on behalf of some components.

2.2. Devices Powered by and Connected to a Network Device

This scenario covers Power over Ethernet (PoE) devices. A PoE Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) device [RFC3621] (e.g. a PoE switch) provides power to a Powered Device (PD) (e.g. a desktop phone). For each port, the PSE can control the power supply (switching it on and off) and meter actual power provided. PDs obtain network connectivity as well as power over a single connection so the PSE can determine which device is associated with each port.

PoE ports on a switch are commonly connected to devices such as IP phones, wireless access points, and IP cameras. The switch needs power for its internal use and to supply power to PoE ports. Monitoring the power consumption of the switch (supplying device) and the power consumption of the PoE endpoints (consuming devices) is a simple use case of this scenario.

This scenario illustrates the relationships between entities. The PoE IP phone is powered by the switch. If there are many IP phones connected to the same switch and the power consumption of all the IP phones can be aggregated by the switch. In that case, the switch performs the aggregation function for other entities.

The essential properties of this use case are:

- . Target devices: power over Ethernet devices such as IP phones, wireless access points, and IP cameras.
- . How powered: PoE devices are connected to the switch port which supplies power to those devices.
- . Reporting: PoE device power consumption is measured and reported by the switch (PSE) which supplies power. In addition, some edge devices can support the EMAN framework.

This use case can be divided into two sub cases:

- a) The end device supports the EMAN framework, in which case this device is an EMAN Energy Object by itself, with its own UUID, like in scenario "Devices Connected to a Network" below. The device is responsible for its own power reporting and control.
- b) The end device does not have EMAN capabilities, and the power measurement may not be able to be performed independently, and so is only performed by the supplying device. This scenario is similar to the "Mid-level Manager" below.

In the sub case (a) note that two power usage reporting mechanisms for the same device are available: one performed by the PD itself and one performed by the PSE. Device specific implementations will dictate which one to use.

It is also possible to illustrate the relationships between entities. The PoE IP phone is powered by the switch. If there are many IP phones connected to the same switch and the power consumption of all the IP phones can be aggregated by the switch. In that case, the switch performs the aggregation function for other entities.

2.3. Devices Connected to a Network

The use case covers the metering relationship between an energy object and the parent energy object it is connected to, while receiving power from a different source.

An example is a PC which has a network connection to a switch, but draws power from a wall outlet. In this case, the PC can report power usage by itself, ideally through the EMAN framework.

The wall outlet the PC is plugged in can be metered for example by a Smart PDU, or unmetered.

- a) If metered, the PC has a powered-by relationship to the Smart PDU, and the Smart PDU acts as a "Mid-Level Manager"
- b) If unmetered - or running on batteries - the PC will report its own energy usage as any other Energy Object to the switch, and the switch can possibly provide aggregation.

In terms of relationships between entities, the PC has a powered by relationship to the PDU and if the power consumption of the PC is metered by the PDU then there is a metered by relation between the PC and the PDU.

The essential properties of this use case are:

- . Target devices: energy objects that have a network connection, but receive power supply from another source.
- . How powered: end devices (e.g. PCs) receive power supply from the wall outlet (unmetered), or a PDU (metered). That can also be powered autonomously (batteries).
- . Reporting: devices can measure and report the power consumption directly via the EMAN framework, or, communicate it to the network device (switch) and the switch can report the device's power consumption via the EMAN framework.

2.4. Power Meters

Some electrical devices are not equipped with instrumentation to measure their own power and accumulated energy consumption. External meters can be used to measure the power consumption of such electrical devices as well as collections of devices. This use case covers energy objects able to measure or report the power consumption of external electrical devices, not natively connected to the network.

Three types of external metering are relevant to EMAN: PDUs, standalone meters, and utility meters. External meters can measure consumption of a single device or a set of devices.

Power Distribution Unit (PDUs) usually have inbuilt meters for each socket and so can measure the power supplied to each device in an equipment rack. The PDUs have remote management functionality which can measure and possibly control the power supply of each outlet.

Standalone meters can be placed anywhere in a power distribution tree and so may measure the total of groups of devices. Utility meters monitor and report accumulated power consumption of the entire building. There can be sub-meters to measure the power consumption of a portion of the building.

The essential properties of this use case are:

- . Target devices: PDUs and meters.
- . How powered: from traditional mains power but as passed through a PDU or meter.
- . Reporting: PDUs report power consumption of downstream devices, usually a single device per outlet.

The meters can have a metering relationship and possibly aggregation relationship between the meters and the devices for which power consumption is accumulated and reported by the meter.

2.5. Mid-level Managers

This use case covers aggregation of energy management data at "mid-level managers" that can provide energy management functions for themselves as well as associated devices.

A switch can provide energy management functions for all devices connected to its ports, whether or not these devices are powered by the switch or whether the switch provides immediate network connectivity to the devices. Such a switch is a mid-level manager, offering aggregation of power consumption data for other devices. Devices report their EMAN data to the switch and the switch aggregates the data for further reporting.

The essential properties of this use case:

- . Target devices: devices which can perform aggregation; commonly a switch or a proxy.
- . How powered: mid-level managers are commonly powered by a PDU or from a wall outlet but can be powered by any method.
- . Reporting: the middle-manager aggregates the energy data and reports that data to a NMS or higher mid-level manager.

2.6. Non-residential Building System Gateways

This use case describes energy management of non-residential buildings. Building Management Systems (BMS) have been in place for many years using legacy protocols not based on IP. In these buildings, a gateway can provide a proxy function between IP and legacy building automation protocols. The gateway provides an interface between the EMAN framework and relevant building management protocols.

Due to the potential energy savings, energy management of buildings has received significant attention. There are gateway network elements to manage the multiple components of a building energy management system such as Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning (HVAC), lighting, electrical, fire and emergency systems, elevators, etc. The gateway device uses legacy building protocols to communicate with those devices, collects their energy usage, and reports the results.

The gateway performs protocol conversion and communicates via RS-232/RS-485 interfaces, Ethernet interfaces, and protocols specific to building management such as BACNET [ASHRAE], MODBUS [MODBUS], or ZigBee [ZIGBEE].

The essential properties of this use case are:

- . Target devices: building energy management devices - HVAC systems, lighting, electrical, fire and emergency systems.
- . How powered: any method.
- . Reporting: the gateway collects energy consumption of non-IP systems and communicates the data via the EMAN framework.

2.7. Home Energy Gateways

This use case describes the scenario of energy management of a home. The home energy gateway is another example of a proxy that interfaces to electrical appliances and other devices in a home. This gateway can monitor and manage electrical equipment (e.g. refrigerator, heating/cooling, or washing machine) using one of the many protocols that are being developed for residential devices.

In its simplest form, metering can be performed at home. Beyond the metering, it is also possible to implement energy saving policies based on energy pricing from the utility grid. The EMAN information model can be applied to energy management of a home.

The essential properties of this use case are:

- . Target devices: home energy gateway and smart meters in a home.
- . How powered: any method.
- . Reporting: home energy gateway can collect power consumption of device in a home and possibly report the metering reading to the utility.

Beyond the canonical setting of a home drawing power from the utility, it is also possible to envision an energy neutral situation wherein the buildings/homes that can produce and consume energy with reduced or zero net importing energy from the utility grid. There are many energy production technologies such as solar panels, wind turbines, or micro generators. This use case illustrates the concept of covers self-contained energy generation and consumption and possibly the aggregation of the energy use of homes.

2.8. Data Center Devices

This use case describes energy management of a data center. Energy efficiency of data centers has become a fundamental challenge of data center operation, as datacenters are big energy consumers and have expensive infrastructure. The equipment generates heat, and heat needs to be evacuated through a HVAC system.

A typical data center network consists of a hierarchy of electrical energy objects. At the bottom of the network hierarchy are servers mounted on a rack; these are connected to top-of-the-rack switches, which in turn are connected to aggregation switches, and then to core switches. Power consumption of all network elements, servers, and storage devices in the data center should be measured. Energy management can be implemented on different aggregation levels, at the network level, Power Distribution Unit (PDU) level, and server level.

Beyond the network devices, storage devices and servers, data centers contain UPSs to provide back-up power for the facility in the event in the event of a power outage. A UPS can provide backup power for many devices in a data center for a finite period of time. Energy monitoring of such energy storage devices is vital from a data center network operations point of view. Presently, the UPS MIB can be useful in monitoring the battery capacity, the input load to the UPS and the output load from the UPS. Currently, there is no link between the UPS MIB and the ENTITY MIB.

Thus, for data center energy management, in addition to monitoring the energy usage of IT equipment, it is also important to monitor the remaining capacity of the UPS.

In addition to monitoring the power consumption of a data center, additional power characteristic metrics should be monitored. Some of these are dynamic variations in the input power supply from the grid referred to as power characteristics is one metric. Secondly, it can be useful to monitor how efficiently the devices utilize power.

The nameplate power consumption (the worst case possible power draw) of all devices will make it possible to know an aggregate of the potential worst-case power usage and compare it to the budgeted power in the data center.

The essential properties of this use case are:

- . Target devices: all IT devices in a data center, such as network equipment, servers, and storage devices, as well as power and cooling infrastructure.
- . How powered: any method but commonly by one or more PDUs.
- . Reporting: devices may report on their own behalf, or for other connected devices as described in other use cases.

2.9. Energy Storage Devices

There are two types of devices with energy storage: those whose primary function is to provide power to another device (e.g. a UPS), and those with a different primary function, but which have energy storage as a component (e.g. a notebook). This use case covers both.

The energy storage can be a conventional battery, or any other means to store electricity such as a hydrogen cell.

An internal battery can be a back-up or an alternative source of power to mains power. As batteries have a finite capacity and lifetime, means for reporting the actual charge, age, and state of a battery are required. An internal battery can be viewed as a component of a device and so be contained within the device from an ENTITY-MIB perspective.

Battery systems are used in mobile telecom towers including for use in remote locations. It is important to monitor the remaining battery life and raise an alarm when this falls below a threshold.

The essential properties of this use case are:

- . Target devices: devices that have an internal battery.

- . How powered: from internal batteries or mains power.
- . Reporting: the device reports on its internal battery.

2.10. Industrial Automation Networks

Energy consumption statistics in the industrial sector are staggering. The industrial sector alone consumes about half of the world's total delivered energy, and is a significant user of electricity. Thus, the need for optimization of energy usage in this sector is natural.

Industrial facilities consume energy in process loads, and in non-process loads.

The essential properties of this use case are:

- . Target devices: devices used in industrial automation.
- . How powered: any method.
- . Reporting: currently, CIP protocol is currently used for reporting energy for these devices.

2.11. Printers

This use case describes the scenario of energy monitoring and management of printers.

Printers in this use case stand in for all imaging equipment, also including multi-function devices (MFDs), copiers, scanners, fax machines, and mailing machines.

Energy use of printers has been an industry concern for several decades, and they usually have sophisticated power management with a variety of low-power modes, particularly for managing energy-intensive thermo-mechanical components. Printers also have long made extensive use of SNMP for end-user system interaction and for management generally, and cross-vendor management systems manage fleets of printers in enterprises. Power consumption during active modes can vary widely, with high peak levels.

Printers can expose detailed power state information, distinct from operational state information, with some printers reporting transition states between stable long-term states. Many also support active setting of power states, and setting of policies such as delay times when no activity will cause automatic transition to a lower power mode. Other features include

Internet-Draft EMAN Applicability Statement April 2013
reporting on components, counters for state transitions, typical
power levels by state, scheduling, and events/alarms.

Some large printers also have a "Digital Front End" which is a computer that performs functions on behalf of the physical imaging system. These typically have their own presence on the network and are sometimes separately powered.

There are some unique characteristics of printers from the point of view energy management. While the printer is not in use, there are timer based low power states, which consume little power. On the other hand, while the printer is printing or copying the cylinder needs to be heated so that power consumption is quite high but only for a short period of time. Given this work load, periodic polling of power levels alone would not suffice.

The essential properties of this use case are:

- . Target devices: all imaging equipment.
- . How powered: typically AC from a wall outlet.
- . Reporting: devices report for themselves.

2.12. Off-Grid Devices

This use case concerns self-contained devices that use energy but are not connected to an infrastructure power delivery grid. These devices typically scavenge energy from environmental sources such as solar energy or wind power. The device generally contains a closely coupled combination of

- . power scavenging or generation component(s)
- . power storage component(s) (e.g., battery)
- . power consuming component(s)

With scavenged power, the energy input is often dependent on the random variations of the weather. These devices therefore require energy management both for internal control and remote reporting of their state. In order to optimize the performance of these devices and minimize the costs of the generation and storage components, it is desirable to vary the activity level, and, hopefully, the energy requirements of the consuming components in order to make best use of the available stored and instantaneously generated energy. With appropriate energy management, the overall device can be optimized to deliver an appropriate level of service without over provisioning the generation and storage components.

In many cases these devices are expected to operate autonomously, as continuous communications for the purposes of remote control is either impossible or would result in excessive power consumption. Non continuous polling requires the ability to store and access later the information collected while the communication was not possible.

The essential properties of this use case are:

Target Devices: remote network devices (mobile network) that consume and produce energy.

How Powered: can be battery powered or using local energy sources.

Reporting: devices report their power usage, but only occasionally.

2.13. Demand Response

The theme of demand response from a utility grid spans across several use cases. In some situations, in response to time-of-day fluctuation of energy costs or sudden energy shortages due power outages, it may be important to respond and reduce the energy consumption of the network.

From EMAN use case perspective, the demand response scenario can apply to a Data Center or a Building or a residential home. As a first step, it may be important to monitor the energy consumption in real-time of a Data center, building or home which is already discussed in the previous use cases. Then based on the potential energy shortfall, the EnMS could formulate a suitable response. The EnMS could shut down selected devices that are considered lower priority or uniformly reduce the power supplied to all devices. For multi-site data centers it may be possible to formulate policies such as follow-the-sun type of approach, by scheduling the mobility of VMs across Data centers in different geographical locations.

2.14. Power Capping

Power capping is a technique to limit the total power consumption of a server, and it can be useful for power limited data centers. Based on workload measurements, the server can choose the optimal power state of the server in terms of performance and power consumption. When the server operates at less than the power supply capacity, it runs at full speed. When the server power would be greater than the power supply

Internet-Draft EMAN Applicability Statement April 2013
capacity, it runs at a slower speed so that its power
consumption matches the available power supply capacity. This
gives vendors the option to use smaller, cost-effective power
supplies that allow real world workloads to run at nominal
themselves.

3. Use Case Patterns

The use cases presented above can be abstracted to the following
broad patterns.

3.1. Metering

- energy objects which have capability for internal metering
- energy objects which are metered by an external device

3.2. Metering and Control

- energy objects that do not supply power, but can perform only
power metering for other devices
- energy objects that do not supply power, but can perform both
metering and control for other devices

3.3. Power Supply, Metering and Control

- energy objects that supply power for other devices but do not
perform power metering for those devices
- energy objects that supply power for other devices and also
perform power metering
- energy objects supply power for other devices and also perform
power metering and control for other devices

3.4. Multiple Power Sources

- energy objects that have multiple power sources and metering
and control are performed by the same power source
- energy objects that have multiple power sources supplying
power to the device and metering is performed by one source and
control is performed by another source

4. Relationship of EMAN to other Standards

The EMAN framework is tied to other standards and efforts that deal with energy. EMAN leverages existing standards when possible, and it helps enable adjacent technologies such as Smart Grid.

The standards most relevant and applicable to EMAN are listed below with a brief description of their objectives, the current state and how that standard relates to EMAN.

4.1. Data Model and Reporting

4.1.1. IEC - CIM

The International Electro-technical Commission (IEC) has developed a broad set of standards for power management. Among these, the most applicable to EMAN is IEC 61850, a standard for the design of electric utility automation. The abstract data model defined in 61850 is built upon and extends the Common Information Model (CIM). The complete 61850 CIM model includes over a hundred object classes and is widely used by utilities worldwide.

This set of standards was originally conceived to automate control of a substation (facilities which transfer electricity from the transmission to the distribution system). However, the extensive data model has been widely used in other domains, including Energy Management Systems (EMS).

IEC TC57 WG19 is an ongoing working group to harmonize the CIM data model and 61850 standards.

Several concepts from IEC Standards have been reused in the EMAN drafts. In particular, AC Power Quality measurements have been reused from IEC 61850-7-4. The concept of Accuracy Classes for measure of power and energy has been adapted from ANSI C12.20 and IEC standards 62053-21 and 62053-22.

4.1.2. DMTF

The Distributed Management Task Force (DMTF) has defined a Power State Management profile [DMTF.DSP1027] for managing computer systems using the DMTF's Common Information Model (CIM). These specifications provide physical, logical, and virtual system management requirements for power-state control services. The DMTF standard does not include energy monitoring.

The Power State Management profile is used to describe and manage the Power State of computer systems. This includes controlling the Power State of an entity for entering sleep mode, re-awaking, and rebooting. The EMAN framework references the DMTF Power Profile and Power State Set.

4.1.2.1. Common Information Model Profiles

The DMTF uses CIM-based (Common Information Model) 'Profiles' to represent and manage power utilization and configuration of managed elements (note that this is not the 61850 CIM). Key profiles for energy management are 'Power Supply' (DSP 1015), 'Power State' (DSP 1027) and 'Power Utilization Management' (DSP 1085). These profiles define many features for monitoring and configuration of a Power Managed Element's static and dynamic power saving modes, power allocation limits and power states.

Reduced power modes can be established as static or dynamic. Static modes are fixed policies that limit power use or utilization. Dynamic power saving modes rely upon internal feedback to control power consumption.

Power states are eight named operational and non operational levels. These are On, Sleep-Light, Sleep-Deep, Hibernate, Off-Soft, and Off-Hard. Power change capabilities provide immediate, timed interval, and graceful transitions between on, off, and reset power states. Table 3 of the Power State Profile defines the correspondence between the ACPI and DMTF power state models, although it is not necessary for a managed element to support ACPI. Optionally, a TransitingToPowerState property can represent power state transitions in progress.

4.1.2.2. DASH

DMTF DASH (DSP0232) (Desktop And Mobile Architecture for System Hardware) addresses managing heterogeneous desktop and mobile systems (including power) via in-band and out-of-band communications. DASH provides management and control of managed elements like power, CPU, etc. using the DMTF's WS-Management web services and CIM data model.

Both in-service and out-of-service systems can be managed with the DASH specification in a fully secured remote environment. Full power lifecycle management is possible using out-of-band management.

4.1.3. ODVA

The Open DeviceNet Vendors Association (ODVA) is an association for industrial automation companies and defines the Common Industrial Protocol (CIP). Within ODVA, there is a special interest group focused on energy and standardization and interoperability of energy-aware devices.

The Open DeviceNet Vendors Association (ODVA) is developing an energy management framework for the industrial sector. There are synergies and similar concepts between the ODVA and EMAN approaches to energy monitoring and management. In particular, one of the concepts being considered different energy meters based on if the device consumes electricity or produces electricity or a passive device.

ODVA defines a three-part approach towards energy management: awareness of energy usage, consuming energy more efficiently, and exchanging energy with the utility or others. Energy monitoring and management promote efficient consumption and enable automating actions that reduce energy consumption.

The foundation of the approach is the information and communication model for entities. An entity is a network-connected, energy-aware device that has the ability to either measure or derive its energy usage based on its native consumption or generation of energy, or report a nominal or static energy value.

4.1.4. Ecma SDC

The Ecma International committee on Smart Data Centre (TC38-TG2 SDC [Ecma-SDC]) is defining semantics for management of entities in a data center such as servers, storage, and network equipment. It covers energy as one of many functional resources or attributes of systems for monitoring and control. It only defines messages and properties, and does not reference any specific protocol. Its goal is to enable interoperability of such protocols as SNMP, BACNET, and HTTP by ensuring a common semantic model across them. Four power states are defined, Off, Sleep, Idle, and Active. The standard does not include actual energy or power measurements.

The 14th draft of SDC process was published in March 2011 and the development of the standard is still underway. When used with EMAN, the SDC standard will provide a thin abstraction on top of the more detailed data model available in EMAN.

The IEEE-ISTO Printer Working Group [PWG5106.4] defines open standards for printer related protocols, for the benefit of printer manufacturers and related software vendors. The Printer WG covers power monitoring and management of network printers and imaging systems in the PWG Power Management Model for Imaging Systems [PWG5106.4]. Clearly, these devices are within the scope of energy management since these devices receive power and are attached to the network. In addition, there is ample scope of power management since printers and imaging systems are not used that often.

The IEEE-ISTO Printer Working Group (PWG) defines SNMP MIB modules for printer management and in particular a "PWG Power Management Model for Imaging Systems v1.0" [PWG5106.4] and a companion SNMP binding in the "PWG Imaging System Power MIB v1.0" [PWG5106.5]. This PWG model and MIB are harmonized with the DMTF CIM Infrastructure [DSP0004] and DMTF CIM Power State Management Profile [DSP1027] for power states and alerts.

These MIB modules can be useful for monitoring the power and Power State of printers. The EMAN framework takes into account the standards defined in the Printer working group. The PWG may harmonize its MIBs with those from EMAN. The PWG covers many topics in greater detail than EMAN, as well as some that are specific to imaging equipment. The PWG also provides for vendor-specific extension states (beyond the standard DMTF CIM states).

The IETF Printer MIB RFC3805 [RFC3805] has been standardized, however, this MIB module does not address power management.

4.1.6. ASHRAE

In the U.S., there is an extensive effort to coordinate and develop standards related to the "Smart Grid". The Smart Grid Interoperability Panel, coordinated by the government National Institute of Standards and Technology, identified the need for a building side information model (as a counterpart to utility models) and specified this in Priority Action Plan (PAP) 17. This was designated to be a joint effort by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) and the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA), both ANSI approved SDO's. The result is to be an information model, not a protocol.

The ASHRAE effort addresses data used only within a building as well as data that may be shared with the grid, particularly as it relates to coordinating future demand levels with the needs of the grid. The model is intended to be applied to any building type, both residential and commercial. It is expected that existing protocols will be adapted to comply with the new information model, as would new protocols.

There are four basic types of entities in the model: generators, loads, meters, and energy managers.

The metering part of the model overlaps with the EMAN framework to a large degree, though there are features unique to each. The load part speaks to control capabilities well beyond what EMAN covers. Details of generation and of the energy management function are outside of EMAN scope.

A public review draft of the ASHRAE standard was released in July, 2012. There are no apparent major conflicts between the two approaches, but there are areas where some harmonization is possible.

4.1.7. ZigBee

The ZigBee Smart Energy 2.0 effort [ZIGBEE] focuses on wireless communication to appliances and lighting. ZigBee 1.x is not based on IP, whereas ZigBee 2.0 is supposed to interoperate with IP. It is intended to enable building energy management and enable direct load control by utilities.

ZigBee protocols are intended for use in embedded applications with low data rates and low power consumption. ZigBee defines a general-purpose, inexpensive, self-organizing mesh network that can be used for industrial control, embedded sensing, medical data collection, smoke and intruder warning, building automation, home automation, etc.

ZigBee is currently not an ANSI recognized SDO.

The EMAN framework addresses the needs of IP-enabled networks through the usage of SNMP, while ZigBee looks for completely integrated and inexpensive mesh solution.

4.2. Measurement

The American National Standards Institute (ANSI) has defined a collection of power meter standards under ANSI C12. The primary standards include communication protocols (C12.18, 21 and 22), data and schema definitions (C12.19), and measurement accuracy (C12.20). European equivalent standards are provided by IEC 62053-22. ANSI C12.20 defines accuracy classes for power meters.

These standards are oriented to the meter itself, are very specific, and used by electricity distributors and producers.

The EMAN standard references ANSI C12 accuracy classes.

4.2.2. IEC 62301

IEC 62301, "Household electrical appliances Measurement of standby power", specifies a power level measurement procedure. While nominally for appliances and low-power modes, many aspects of it apply to other device types and modes and it is commonly referenced in test procedures for energy using products.

While the standard is intended for laboratory measurements of devices in controlled conditions, many aspects of it are informative to those implementing measurement in products that ultimately report via EMAN.

4.3. Other

4.3.1. ISO

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) [ISO] is developing an energy management standard, ISO 50001, to complement ISO 9001 for quality management, and ISO 14001 for environmental management. The intent is to facilitate the creation of energy management programs for industrial, commercial, and other entities. The standard defines a process for energy management at an organization level. It does not define the way in which devices report energy and consume energy.

ISO 50001 is based on the common elements found in all of ISO's management system standards, assuring a high level of compatibility with ISO 9001 and ISO 14001. ISO 50001 benefits include:

- o Integrating energy efficiency into management practices and throughout the supply chain
- o Energy management best practices and good energy management behaviors
- o benchmarking, measuring, documenting, and reporting energy intensity improvements and their projected impact on reductions in greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions
- o Evaluating and prioritizing the implementation of new energy-efficient technologies

ISO 50001 has been developed by ISO project committee ISO PC 242, Energy management. EMAN is complementary to ISO 9001.

4.3.2. Energy Star

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and U.S. Department of Energy (DOE) jointly sponsor the Energy Star program [ESTAR]. The program promotes the development of energy efficient products and practices.

To qualify as Energy Star, products must meet specific energy efficiency targets. The Energy Star program also provides planning tools and technical documentation to encourage more energy efficient building design. Energy Star is a program; it is not a protocol or standard.

For businesses and data centers, Energy Star offers technical support to help companies establish energy conservation practices. Energy Star provides best practices for measuring current energy performance, goal setting, and tracking improvement. The Energy Star tools offered include a rating system for building performance and comparative benchmarks.

There is no immediate link between EMAN and EnergyStar, one being a protocol and the other a set of recommendations to develop energy efficient products. However, Energy Star could include EMAN standards in specifications for future products, either as required or rewarded with some benefit.

4.3.3. Smart Grid

The Smart Grid standards efforts underway in the United States are overseen by the U.S. National Institute of Standards and Technology [NIST]. NIST is responsible for coordinating a public-private partnership with key energy and consumer stakeholders in order to facilitate the development of smart

grid standards. These activities are monitored and facilitated by the SGIP (Smart Grid Interoperability Panel). This group has working groups for specific topics including homes, commercial buildings, and industrial facilities as they relate to the grid. A stated goal of the group is to harmonize any new standard with the IEC CIM and IEC 61850.

When a working group detects a standard or technology gap, the team seeks approval from the SGIP for the creation of a Priority Action Plan (PAP), a private-public partnership to close the gap. PAP 17 is discussed in section 4.1.6.

PAP 10 addresses "Standard Energy Usage Information". Smart Grid standards will provide distributed intelligence in the network and allow enhanced load shedding. For example, pricing signals will enable selective shutdown of non critical activities during peak price periods. Both centralized and distributed management controls are in scope.

There is an obvious functional link between Smart Grid and EMAN in the form of demand response, even though the EMAN framework itself does not address any coordination with the grid. As EMAN enables control, it can be used by an EnMS to accomplish demand response through translation of a signal from an outside entity.

5. Limitations

EMAN addresses the needs of energy monitoring in terms of measurement and, considers limited control capabilities of energy monitoring of networks.

EMAN does not create a new protocol stack, but rather defines a data and information model useful for measuring and reporting energy and other metrics over SNMP.

EMAN does not address questions regarding Smart Grid, electricity producers, and distributors.

6. Security Considerations

EMAN uses the SNMP protocol and thus has the functionality of SNMP's security capabilities. SNMPv3 [RFC3411] provides important security features such as confidentiality, integrity, and authentication.

7. IANA Considerations

This memo includes no request to IANA.

8. Acknowledgements

Firstly, the authors thank Emmanuel Tychon for taking the lead for this draft and his substantial contributions to it. The authors thank Jeff Wheeler, Benoit Claise, Juergen Quittek, Chris Verges, John Parello, and Matt Laherty, for their valuable contributions. The authors thank Georgios Karagiannis for use case involving energy neutral homes, Elwyn Davies for off-grid electricity systems, and Kerry Lynn for demand response.

9. References

9.1. Normative References

[RFC3411] An Architecture for Describing Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Management Frameworks, RFC 3411, December 2002.

[RFC3621] Power Ethernet MIB, RFC 3621, December 2003.

9.2. Informative References

[DASH] "Desktop and mobile Architecture for System Hardware", <http://www.dmtf.org/standards/mgmt/dash/>

[NIST] <http://www.nist.gov/smartgrid/>

[Ecma-SDC] Ecma TC38 / SDC Task Group, "Smart Data Centre Resource Monitoring and Control (DRAFT)", March 2011.

[ESTAR] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kilowatt_hour

[EMAN-AS] B. Schoening, Mouli Chandramouli, Bruce Nordman, "Energy Management (EMAN) Applicability Statement", draft-ietf-eman-applicability-statement-02.txt, October 2012.

[EMAN-REQ] Quittek, J., Chandramouli, M. Winter, R., Dietz, T., Claise, B., and M. Chandramouli, "Requirements for

Internet-Draft EMAN Applicability Statement April 2013
Energy Management ", draft-ietf-eman-requirements-12,
February 2013.

[EMAN-MONITORING-MIB] M. Chandramouli, Schoening, B., Dietz, T.,
Quittek, J. and B. Claise "Energy and Power Monitoring
MIB ", draft-ietf-eman-monitoring-mib-04, October
2012.

[EMAN-AWARE-MIB] J. Parello, B. Claise and Mouli Chandramouli,
"draft-ietf-eman-energy-aware-mib-07", work in
progress, October 2012.

[EMAN-FRAMEWORK] Claise, B., Parello, J., Schoening, B., J.
Quittek and B. Nordman, "Energy Management Framework",
draft-ietf-eman-framework-07, February 2013.

[EMAN-BATTERY-MIB] Quittek, J., Winter, R., and T. Dietz,
"Definition of Managed Objects for Battery Monitoring"
draft-ietf-eman-battery-mib-08.txt, February 2013.

[EMAN-DEF] J. Parello "Energy Management Terminology", draft-
parello-eman-definitions-07, Work in progress,
October, 2012.

[DMTF] "Power State Management ProfileDMTFDSP1027 Version 2.0"
December2009.
[http://www.dmtf.org/sites/default/files/standards/docum
ents/DSP1027_2.0.0.pdf](http://www.dmtf.org/sites/default/files/standards/documents/DSP1027_2.0.0.pdf)

[ESTAR] <http://www.energystar.gov/>

[ISO] <http://www.iso.org/iso/pressrelease.htm?refid=Ref1434>

[ASHRAE] [http://collaborate.nist.gov/twiki-
sggrid/bin/view/SmartGrid/PAP17Information](http://collaborate.nist.gov/twiki-sggrid/bin/view/SmartGrid/PAP17Information)

[ZIGBEE] <http://www.zigBee.org/>

[ISO] <http://www.iso.org/iso/pressrelease.htm?refid=Ref1337>

Internet-Draft EMAN Applicability Statement April 2013

[DSP0004] DMTF Common Information Model (CIM) Infrastructure,
DSP0004, May 2009.
http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0004_2.5.0.pdf

[DSP1027] DMTF Power State Management Profile, DSP1027, December 2009.
http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1027_2.0.0.pdf

[PWG5106.4] IEEE-ISTO PWG Power Management Model for Imaging Systems v1.0, PWG Candidate Standard 5106.4-2011, February 2011.
<ftp://ftp.pwg.org/pub/pwg/candidates/cs-wimspower10-20110214-5106.4.mib>

[PWG5106.5] IEEE-ISTO PWG Imaging System Power MIB v1.0, PWG Candidate Standard 5106.5-2011, February 2011.

[IEC62301] International Electrotechnical Commission, "IEC 62301 Household electrical appliances Measurement of standby power", Edition 2.0, 2011.

[MODBUS] Modbus-IDA, "MODBUS Application Protocol Specification V1.1b", December 2006.

Brad Schoening
44 Rivers Edge Drive
Little Silver, NJ 07739
USA

Phone: +1 917 304 7190
Email: brad.schoening@verizon.net

Mouli Chandramouli
Cisco Systems, Inc.
Sarjapur Outer Ring Road
Bangalore 560103
India

Phone: +91 80 4429 2409
Email: moulchan@cisco.com

Bruce Nordman
Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory
1 Cyclotron Road, 90-4000
Berkeley 94720-8136
USA

Phone: +1 510 486 7089
Email: bnordman@lbl.gov

Network Working Group
Internet-Draft
Intended status: Standards Track
Expires: January 16, 2014

J. Quittek
R. Winter
T. Dietz
NEC Europe Ltd.
July 15, 2013

Definition of Managed Objects for Battery Monitoring
draft-ietf-eman-battery-mib-09

Abstract

This memo defines a portion of the Management Information Base (MIB) for use with network management protocols in the Internet community. In particular, it defines managed objects that provide information on the status of batteries in managed devices.

Status of this Memo

This Internet-Draft is submitted in full conformance with the provisions of BCP 78 and BCP 79.

Internet-Drafts are working documents of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF). Note that other groups may also distribute working documents as Internet-Drafts. The list of current Internet-Drafts is at <http://datatracker.ietf.org/drafts/current/>.

Internet-Drafts are draft documents valid for a maximum of six months and may be updated, replaced, or obsoleted by other documents at any time. It is inappropriate to use Internet-Drafts as reference material or to cite them other than as "work in progress."

This Internet-Draft will expire on January 16, 2014.

Copyright Notice

Copyright (c) 2013 IETF Trust and the persons identified as the document authors. All rights reserved.

This document is subject to BCP 78 and the IETF Trust's Legal Provisions Relating to IETF Documents (<http://trustee.ietf.org/license-info>) in effect on the date of publication of this document. Please review these documents carefully, as they describe your rights and restrictions with respect to this document. Code Components extracted from this document must include Simplified BSD License text as described in Section 4.e of the Trust Legal Provisions and are provided without warranty as described in the Simplified BSD License.

Table of Contents

1. Introduction	3
2. The Internet-Standard Management Framework	4
3. Design of the Battery MIB Module	5
3.1. MIB Module Structure	5
3.2. Battery Technologies	7
3.3. Charging Cycles	8
4. Definitions	8
5. Security Considerations	28
6. IANA Considerations	30
6.1. SMI Object Identifier Registration	30
6.2. Battery Technology Registration	30
7. Open Issues	30
7.1. Battery replacement	31
7.2. Compliance statements for notifications	31
8. Acknowledgements	31
9. References	31
9.1. Normative References	31
9.2. Informative References	32
Authors' Addresses	32

1. Introduction

Today, more and more managed devices contain batteries that supply them with power when disconnected from electrical power distribution grids. Common examples are nomadic and mobile devices, such as notebook computers, netbooks, and smart phones. The status of batteries in such a device, particularly the charging status is typically controlled by automatic functions that act locally on the device and manually by users of the device.

In addition to this, there is a need to monitor battery status of these devices by network management systems. This document defines a portion of the Management Information Base (MIB) that provides a means for monitoring batteries in or attached to managed devices. The Battery MIB module defined in Section 4 meets the requirements for monitoring the status of batteries specified in [I-D.ietf-eman-requirements].

The Battery MIB module provides for monitoring the battery status. According to the framework for energy management [I-D.ietf-eman-framework] it is an Energy Managed Object, and thus, MIB modules such as the Power and Energy Monitoring MIB [I-D.ietf-eman-energy-monitoring-mib] could in principle be implemented for batteries. The Battery MIB extends the more generic aspects of energy management by adding battery-specific information. Amongst other things, the Battery MIB enables the monitoring of:

- o the current charge of a battery,
- o the age of a battery (charging cycles),
- o the state of a battery (e.g. being re-charged),
- o last usage of a battery,
- o maximum energy provided by a battery (remaining and total capacity).

Further, means are provided for battery-powered devices to send notifications when the current battery charge has dropped below a certain threshold to inform the management system of needed replacement. The same applies to the age of a battery.

Many battery-driven devices have existing instrumentation for monitoring the battery status, because this is already needed for local control of the battery by the device. This reduces the effort for implementing the managed objects defined in this document. For many devices only additional software will be needed but no additional hardware instrumentation for battery monitoring.

Since there are a lot of devices in use that contain more than one battery, means for battery monitoring defined in this document

support addressing multiple batteries within a single device. Also, batteries today often come in packages that can include identification and might contain additional hardware and firmware. The former allows tracing a battery and allows continuous monitoring even if the battery is e.g. installed in another device. The firmware version is useful information as the battery behavior might be different for different firmware versions.

Not explicitly in scope of definitions in this document are very small backup batteries, such as for example, batteries used on PC motherboard to run the clock circuit and retain configuration memory while the system is turned off. Other means may be required for reporting on these batteries. However, the MIB module defined in Section 3.1 can be used for this purpose.

A traditional type of managed device containing batteries is an Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) system; these supply other devices with electrical energy when the main power supply fails. There is already a MIB module for managing UPS systems defined in RFC 1628 [RFC1628]. The UPS MIB module includes managed objects for monitoring the batteries contained in an UPS system. However, the information provided by the UPS MIB objects is limited and tailored the particular needs of UPS systems.

The key words "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHALL", "SHALL NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "NOT RECOMMENDED", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" in this document are to be interpreted as described in RFC 2119 [RFC2119].

2. The Internet-Standard Management Framework

For a detailed overview of the documents that describe the current Internet-Standard Management Framework, please refer to section 7 of RFC 3410 [RFC3410].

Managed objects are accessed via a virtual information store, termed the Management Information Base or MIB. MIB objects are generally accessed through the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). Objects in the MIB are defined using the mechanisms defined in the Structure of Management Information (SMI). This memo specifies MIB modules that are compliant to the SMIV2, which is described in STD 58, RFC 2578 [RFC2578], STD 58, RFC 2579 [RFC2579] and STD 58, RFC 2580 [RFC2580].

3. Design of the Battery MIB Module

3.1. MIB Module Structure

The Battery MIB module defined in this document defines objects for reporting information about batteries. All managed objects providing information of the status of a battery are contained in a single table called `batteryTable`. The `batteryTable` contains one conceptual row per battery.

Batteries are indexed by the `entPhysicalIndex` of the `entPhysicalTable` defined in the ENTITY-MIB module [RFC6933]. An implementation of the ENTITY-MIB module complying with the `entity4CRCompliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE` statement is required for compliant implementations of the BATTERY-MIB module.

If batteries are replaced with the replacing battery using the same physical connector as the replaced battery had used, then the replacing battery SHOULD be indexed with the same value of object `entPhysicalIndex` as the replaced battery.

The kind of entity in the `entPhysicalTable` of the Entity MIB module is indicated by the value of enumeration object `entPhysicalClass`. All batteries SHOULD have the value of object `entPhysicalClass` set to `battery(14)` in their row of the `entPhysicalTable`.

The `batteryTable` contains three groups of objects. The first group (OIDs ending with 1-10) provides information on static properties of the battery. The second group of objects (OIDs ending with 11-18) provides information on the current battery state, if it is charging or discharging, how much it is charged, its remaining capacity, the number of experienced charging cycles, etc.

```

batteryTable(1)
+--batteryEntry(1) [entPhysicalIndex]
    +-- r-n SnmpAdminString batteryIdentifier(1)
    +-- r-n SnmpAdminString batteryFirmwareVersion(2)
    +-- r-n Enumeration batteryType(3)
    +-- r-n Unsigned32 batteryTechnology(4)
    +-- r-n Unsigned32 batteryDesignVoltage(5)
    +-- r-n Unsigned32 batteryNumberOfCells(6)
    +-- r-n Unsigned32 batteryDesignCapacity(7)
    +-- r-n Unsigned32 batteryMaxChargingCurrent(8)
    +-- r-n Unsigned32 batteryTrickleChargingCurrent(9)
    +-- r-n Unsigned32 batteryActualCapacity(10)
    +-- r-n Unsigned32 batteryChargingCycleCount(11)
    +-- r-n DateAndTime batteryLastChargingCycleTime(12)
    +-- r-n Enumeration batteryChargingOperState(13)
    +-- rwn Enumeration batteryChargingAdminState(14)
    +-- r-n Unsigned32 batteryActualCharge(15)
    +-- r-n Unsigned32 batteryActualVoltage(16)
    +-- r-n Integer32 batteryActualCurrent(17)
    +-- r-n Integer32 batteryTemperature(18)
    +-- r-n SnmpAdminString batteryCellIdentifier(19)
    +-- rwn Unsigned32 batteryAlarmLowCharge(20)
    +-- rwn Unsigned32 batteryAlarmLowVoltage(21)
    +-- rwn Unsigned32 batteryAlarmLowCapacity(22)
    +-- rwn Unsigned32 batteryAlarmHighCycleCount(23)
    +-- rwn Integer32 batteryAlarmHighTemperature(24)
    +-- rwn Integer32 batteryAlarmLowTemperature(25)

```

The third group of objects in this table (OIDs ending with 20-25) indicates thresholds which can be used to raise an alarm if a property of the battery exceeds one of them. Raising an alarm may include sending a notification.

The Battery MIB defines seven notifications for indicating

1. a battery charging state change that was not triggered by writing to object batteryChargingAdminState,
2. a low battery charging state,
3. a critical battery that cannot be used anymore for power supply,
4. an aged battery that may need to be replaced,
5. a battery exceed a temperature threshold,
6. a battery that has been connected,
7. disconnection of one or more batteries.

Notifications 2.-5. can use object batteryCellIdentifier to indicate a specific cell or a set of cells within the battery that have triggered the notification.

3.2. Battery Technologies

Static information in the batteryTable includes battery type and technology. The battery type distinguishes primary (not rechargeable) batteries from rechargeable (secondary) batteries and capacitors. The battery technology describes the actual technology of a battery, which typically is a chemical technology.

Since battery technologies are subject of intensive research and widely used technologies are often replaced by successor technologies within an few years, the list of battery technologies was not chosen as a fixed list. Instead, IANA has created a registry for battery technologies at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/eman> where numbers are assigned to battery technologies (TBD).

The table below shows battery technologies known today that are in commercial use with the numbers assigned to them by IANA. New entries can be added to the IANA registry if new technologies are developed or if missing technologies are identified. Note that there exists a huge number of battery types that are not listed in the IANA registry. Many of them are experimental or cannot be used in an economically useful way. New entries should be added to the IANA registry only if the respective technologies are in commercial use and relevant to standardized battery monitoring over the Internet.

battery technology	assigned number
Unknown	1
Other	2
Zinc-carbon	3
Zinc chloride	4
Nickel oxyhydroxide	5
Lithium-copper oxide	6
Lithium-iron disulfide	7
Lithium-manganese dioxide	8
Zinc-air	9
Silver oxide	10
Alkaline	11
Lead acid	12
Nickel-cadmium	13
Nickel-metal hybride	14
Nickel-zinc	15
Lithium-ion	16
Lithium polymer	17
Double layer capacitor	18

3.3. Charging Cycles

The lifetime of a battery can be approximated using the measure of charging cycles. A commonly used definition of a charging cycle is the amount of discharge equal to the design (or nominal) capacity of the battery [SBS]. This means that a single charging cycle may include several steps of partial charging and discharging until the amount of discharging has reached the design capacity of the battery. After that the next charging cycle immediately starts.

4. Definitions

```
BATTERY-MIB DEFINITIONS ::= BEGIN
```

```
IMPORTS
```

```
    MODULE-IDENTITY, OBJECT-TYPE, NOTIFICATION-TYPE,
    mib-2, Integer32, Unsigned32
        FROM SNMPv2-SMI                                -- RFC2578
    SnmpAdminString
        FROM SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB                        -- RFC3411
    DateAndTime
        FROM SNMPv2-TC                                -- RFC2579
    MODULE-COMPLIANCE, OBJECT-GROUP, NOTIFICATION-GROUP
        FROM SNMPv2-CONF                                -- RFC2580
    entPhysicalIndex
        FROM ENTITY-MIB                                -- RFC6933
    Unsigned64TC
        FROM APPLICATION-MIB;                          -- RFC2564
```

```
batteryMIB MODULE-IDENTITY
```

```
    LAST-UPDATED "201307151200Z"                      -- 15 july 2013
    ORGANIZATION "IETF EMAN Working Group"
    CONTACT-INFO
        "General Discussion: eman@ietf.org
        To Subscribe: http://www.ietf.org/mailman/listinfo/eman
        Archive: http://www.ietf.org/mail-archive/web/eman
```

```
    Editor:
```

```
        Juergen Quittek
        NEC Europe Ltd.
        NEC Laboratories Europe
        Kurfuersten-Anlage 36
        69115 Heidelberg
        Germany
        Tel: +49 6221 4342-115
        Email: quittek@neclab.eu"
```


DESCRIPTION

"This MIB module defines a set of objects for monitoring batteries of networked devices and of their components.

Copyright (c) 2010 IETF Trust and the persons identified as authors of the code. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, is permitted pursuant to, and subject to the license terms contained in, the Simplified BSD License set forth in Section 4.c of the IETF Trust's Legal Provisions Relating to IETF Documents (<http://trustee.ietf.org/license-info>).

This version of this MIB module is part of RFC yyyy; see the RFC itself for full legal notices."

-- replace yyyy with actual RFC number & remove this notice

-- Revision history

REVISION "201307151200Z" -- 15 July 2013

DESCRIPTION

"Initial version, published as RFC yyyy."

-- replace yyyy with actual RFC number & remove this notice

::= { mib-2 zzz }

-- zzz to be assigned by IANA.

--*****

-- Top Level Structure of the MIB module

--*****

batteryNotifications OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { batteryMIB 0 }
 batteryObjects OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { batteryMIB 1 }
 batteryConformance OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { batteryMIB 2 }

--=====

-- 1. Object Definitions

--=====

 -- 1.1. Battery Table

batteryTable OBJECT-TYPE
 SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF BatteryEntry
 MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
 STATUS current
 DESCRIPTION

"This table provides information on batteries. It contains one conceptual row per battery.

Batteries are indexed by the entPhysicalIndex of the entPhysicalTable defined in the ENTITY-MIB (RFC6933).

For implementations of the BATTERY-MIB an implementation of the ENTITY-MIB complying with the entity4CRCompliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE statement of the ENTITY-MIB is required.

If batteries are replaced with the replacing battery using the same physical connector as the replaced battery had used, then the replacing battery SHOULD be indexed with the same value of object entPhysicalIndex as the replaced battery."

::= { batteryObjects 1 }

batteryEntry OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX BatteryEntry

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"An entry providing information on a battery."

INDEX { entPhysicalIndex }

::= { batteryTable 1 }

BatteryEntry ::=

SEQUENCE {

batteryIdentifier	SnmpAdminString,
batteryFirmwareVersion	SnmpAdminString,
batteryType	INTEGER,
batteryTechnology	Unsigned32,
batteryDesignVoltage	Unsigned32,
batteryNumberOfCells	Unsigned32,
batteryDesignCapacity	Unsigned32,
batteryMaxChargingCurrent	Unsigned32,
batteryTrickleChargingCurrent	Unsigned32,
batteryActualCapacity	Unsigned32,
batteryChargingCycleCount	Unsigned32,
batteryLastChargingCycleTime	DateAndTime,
batteryChargingOperState	INTEGER,
batteryChargingAdminState	INTEGER,
batteryActualCharge	Unsigned64TC,
batteryActualVoltage	Unsigned32,
batteryActualCurrent	Integer32,
batteryTemperature	Integer32,
batteryCellIdentifier	SnmpAdminString,
batteryAlarmLowCharge	Unsigned32,

```
        batteryAlarmLowVoltage      Unsigned32,
        batteryAlarmLowCapacity     Unsigned32,
        batteryAlarmHighCycleCount  Unsigned32,
        batteryAlarmHighTemperature Integer32,
        batteryAlarmLowTemperature  Integer32
    }

batteryIdentifier OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX      SnmpAdminString
    MAX-ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS      current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This object contains an identifier for the battery.

        Many manufacturers deliver not only simple batteries but
        battery packages including additional hardware and firmware.
        Typically, these modules include an identifier that can be
        retrieved by a device in which a battery has been installed.
        The identifier is useful when batteries are removed and
        re-installed in the same or other devices. Then the device
        or the network management system can trace batteries and
        achieve continuity of battery monitoring.

        If the battery identifier cannot be represented using the
        ISO/IEC IS 10646-1 character set, then a hexadecimal
        encoding of a binary representation of the battery
        identifier must be used.

        The value of this object must be an empty string if there
        is no battery identifier or if the battery identifier is
        unknown."
    ::= { batteryEntry 1 }

batteryFirmwareVersion OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX      SnmpAdminString
    MAX-ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS      current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This object indicates the version number of the firmware
        that is included in a battery module.

        Many manufacturers deliver not pure batteries but battery
        packages including additional hardware and firmware.

        Since the behavior of the battery may change with the
        firmware, it may be useful to retrieve the firmware version
        number.
```

The value of this object must be an empty string if there is no firmware or if the version number of the firmware is unknown."

::= { batteryEntry 2 }

batteryType OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX INTEGER {
 unknown(1),
 other(2),
 primary(3),
 rechargeable(4),
 capacitor(5)
}

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates the type of battery. It distinguishes between primary (not rechargeable) batteries, rechargeable (secondary) batteries and capacitors which are not really batteries but often used in the same way as a battery.

The value other(2) can be used if the battery type is known but none of the ones above. Value unknown(1) is to be used if the type of battery cannot be determined."

::= { batteryEntry 3 }

batteryTechnology OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates the technology used by the battery. Numbers identifying battery types are registered at IANA. A current list of assignments can be found at <<http://www.iana.org/assignments/eman>>.

Value 0 (unknown) MUST be used if the type of battery cannot be determined.

Value 1 (other) can be used if the battery type is known but not one of the types already registered at IANA."

::= { batteryEntry 4 }

batteryDesignVoltage OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32

UNITS "millivolt"

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
"This object provides the design (or nominal) voltage of the battery in units of millivolt (mV).

Note that the design voltage is a constant value and typically different from the actual voltage of the battery.

A value of 0 indicates that the design voltage is unknown."
::= { batteryEntry 5 }

batteryNumberOfCells OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates the number of cells contained in the battery.

A value of 0 indicates that the number of cells is unknown."
::= { batteryEntry 6 }

batteryDesignCapacity OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32

UNITS "milliampere hours"

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object provides the design (or nominal) capacity of the battery in units of milliampere hours (mAh).

Note that the design capacity is a constant value and typically different from the actual capacity of the battery. Usually, this is a value provided by the manufacturer of the battery.

A value of 0 indicates that the design capacity is unknown."
::= { batteryEntry 7 }

batteryMaxChargingCurrent OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32

UNITS "milliampere"

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object provides the maximal current to be used for charging the battery in units of milliampere (mA).

Note that the maximal charging current may not lead to optimal charge of the battery and that some batteries can only be charged with the maximal current for a limited amount of time.

A value of 0 indicates that the maximal charging current is unknown."

::= { batteryEntry 8 }

batteryTrickleChargingCurrent OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32

UNITS "milliampere"

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object provides the recommended current to be used for trickle charging the battery in units of milliampere (mA).

Typically, this is a value recommended by the manufacturer of the battery or by the manufacturer of the charging circuit.

A value of 0 indicates that the recommended trickle charging current is unknown."

::= { batteryEntry 9 }

batteryActualCapacity OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32

UNITS "milliampere hours"

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object provides the actual capacity of the battery in units of milliampere hours (mAh).

Typically, the actual capacity of a battery decreases with time and with usage of the battery. It is usually lower than the design capacity

Note that the actual capacity needs to be measured and is typically an estimate based on observed discharging and charging cycles of the battery.

A value of 'ffffffff'H indicates that the actual capacity cannot be determined."

::= { batteryEntry 10 }

batteryChargingCycleCount OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32
 MAX-ACCESS read-only
 STATUS current
 DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates the number of completed charging cycles that the battery underwent. In line with the Smart Battery Data Specification Revision 1.1, a charging cycle is defined as the process of discharging the battery by a total amount equal to the battery design capacity as given by object batteryDesignCapacity. A charging cycle may include several steps of charging and discharging the battery until the discharging amount given by batteryDesignCapacity has been reached. As soon as a charging cycle has been completed the next one starts immediately independent of the battery's current charge at the end of the cycle.

For batteries of type primary(1) the value of this object is always 0.

A value of 'ffffffff'H indicates that the number of charging cycles cannot be determined."

::= { batteryEntry 11 }

batteryLastChargingCycleTime OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX DateAndTime
 MAX-ACCESS read-only
 STATUS current
 DESCRIPTION

"The date and time of the last charging cycle. The value '0000000000000000'H is returned if the battery has not been charged yet or if the last charging time cannot be determined.

For batteries of type primary(1) the value of this object is always '0000000000000000'H."

::= { batteryEntry 12 }

batteryChargingOperState OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX INTEGER {
 unknown(1),
 charging(2),
 fastCharging(3),
 maintainingCharge(4),
 noCharging(5),
 discharging(6)
 }

MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates the current charging state of the battery.

Value unknown(1) indicates that the charging state of the battery cannot be determined.

Value charging(2) indicates that the battery is being charged in a way that the charge of the battery increases.

Value fastCharging(3) indicated that the battery is being charged rapidly, i.e. faster than in the charging(2) state. If multiple fast charging states exist, all of these states are indicated by fastCharging(3).

Value maintainingCharge(4) indicates that the battery is being charged with a low current that compensates self-discharging. This includes trickle charging, float charging and other methods for maintaining the current charge of a battery.

Value noCharging(5) indicates that the battery is not being charged or discharged by electric current between the battery and electric circuits external to the battery. Note that the battery may still be subject to self-discharging.

Value discharging(6) indicates that the battery is being discharged and that the charge of the battery decreases."

::= { batteryEntry 13 }

batteryChargingAdminState OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX INTEGER {
 charging(2),
 fastCharging(3),
 maintainingCharge(4),
 noCharging(5),
 discharging(6),
 notSet(7)
}

MAX-ACCESS read-write

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"The value of this object indicates the desired status of the charging state of the battery. The real state is indicated by object batteryChargingOperState. See the

definition of object batteryChargingOperState for a description of the values.

When this object is initialized by an implementation of the BATTERY-MIB module, its value is set to notSet(7).

However, a SET request can only set this object to either charging(2), fastCharging(3), maintainingCharge(4), noCharging(5), or discharging(6). Attempts to set this object to notSet(7) will always fail with an 'inconsistentValue' error. In case multiple fast charging states exist, the battery logic can choose an appropriate fast charging state - preferably the fastest.

When the batteryChargingAdminState object is set, then the BATTERY-MIB implementation must try to set the battery to the indicated state. The result will be indicated by object batteryChargingOperState.

Due to operational conditions and limitations of the implementation of the BATTERY-MIB module, changing the battery status according to a set value of object batteryChargingAdminState may not be possible.

Setting the value of object batteryChargingAdminState may result in not changing the state of the battery to this value or even in setting the charging state to another value. For example, setting batteryChargingAdminState to value fastCharging(3) may have no effect when the battery logic is not allowing fast charging due to temperature constraints."

```
::= { batteryEntry 14 }
```

batteryActualCharge OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned64TC

UNITS "milliampere hours"

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object provides the actual charge of the battery in units of milliampere hours (mAh).

Note that the actual charge needs to be measured and is typically an estimate based on observed discharging and charging cycles of the battery.

A value of 'ffffffff'H indicates that the actual charge

```
        cannot be determined."
 ::= { batteryEntry 15 }

batteryActualVoltage OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX      Unsigned32
    UNITS       "millivolt"
    MAX-ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS      current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This object provides the actual voltage of the battery
        in units of millivolt (mV).

        A value of 'ffffffff'H indicates that the actual voltage
        cannot be determined."
 ::= { batteryEntry 16 }

batteryActualCurrent OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX      Integer32
    UNITS       "milliampere"
    MAX-ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS      current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This object provides the actual charging or discharging
        current of the battery in units of milliampere (mA).
        Charging current is represented by positive values,
        discharging current is represented by negative values.

        A value of '7fffffff'H indicates that the actual current
        cannot be determined."
 ::= { batteryEntry 17 }

batteryTemperature OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX      Integer32
    UNITS       "deci-degrees Celsius"
    MAX-ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS      current
    DESCRIPTION
        "The ambient temperature at or near the battery.

        A value of '7fffffff'H indicates that the temperature
        cannot be determined."
 ::= { batteryEntry 18 }

batteryCellIdentifier OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX      SnmpAdminString
    MAX-ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS      current
    DESCRIPTION
```

"The value of this object identifies one or more cells of a battery. The format of the cell identifier may vary between different implementations. It should uniquely identify one or more cells of the indexed battery.

This object can be used for batteries, such as, for example, lithium polymer batteries for which battery controllers monitor cells individually.

This object is used by notifications of type `batteryLowNotification`, `batteryTemperatureNotification`, `batteryCriticalNotification`, and `batteryAgingNotification`. These notifications can use the value of this object to indicate the event that triggered the generation of the notification in more details by specifying a single cell or a set of cells within the battery which are specifically addressed by the notification.

An example use case for this object is a single cell in a battery that exceeds the temperature indicated by object `batteryAlarmHighTemperature`. In such a case, a `batteryTemperatureNotification` can be generated that not just indicates the battery for which the temperature is exceeded but also the particular cell.

The initial value of this object is the empty string. The value of this object is set at each time a `batteryLowNotification`, a `batteryTemperatureNotification`, a `batteryCriticalNotification`, or a `batteryAgingNotification` is generated.

When a notification is generated that does not indicate a specific cell or set of cells, the value of this object is set to the empty string."

::= { batteryEntry 19 }

`batteryAlarmLowCharge` OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32
UNITS "milliampere hours"
MAX-ACCESS read-write
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"This object provides the lower threshold value for object `batteryActualCharge`. If the value of object `batteryActualCharge` falls below this threshold, a low battery alarm will be raised. The alarm procedure may include generating a `batteryLowNotification`.

A value of 0 indicates that no alarm will be raised for any value of object batteryActualCharge."

::= { batteryEntry 20 }

batteryAlarmLowVoltage OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32

UNITS "millivolt"

MAX-ACCESS read-write

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object provides the lower threshold value for object batteryActualVoltage. If the value of object batteryActualVoltage falls below this threshold, a low battery alarm will be raised. The alarm procedure may include generating a batteryLowNotification.

A value of 0 indicates that no alarm will be raised for any value of object batteryActualVoltage."

::= { batteryEntry 21 }

batteryAlarmLowCapacity OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32

UNITS "milliampere hours"

MAX-ACCESS read-write

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object provides the lower threshold value for object batteryActualCapacity. If the value of object batteryActualCapacity falls below this threshold, a battery aging alarm will be raised. The alarm procedure may include generating a batteryAgingNotification.

A value of 0 indicates that no alarm will be raised for any value of object batteryActualCapacity."

::= { batteryEntry 22 }

batteryAlarmHighCycleCount OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Unsigned32

MAX-ACCESS read-write

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object provides the upper threshold value for object batteryChargingCycleCount. If the value of object batteryChargingCycleCount rises above this threshold, a battery aging alarm will be raised. The alarm procedure may include generating a batteryAgingNotification.

A value of 0 indicates that no alarm will be raised for any

```

        value of object batteryChargingCycleCount."
 ::= { batteryEntry 23 }

```

batteryAlarmHighTemperature OBJECT-TYPE

```

SYNTAX      Integer32
UNITS       "deci-degrees Celsius"
MAX-ACCESS  read-write
STATUS      current
DESCRIPTION
    "This object provides the upper threshold value for object
    batteryTemperature.  If the value of object
    batteryTemperature rises above this threshold, a battery
    high temperature alarm will be raised.  The alarm procedure
    may include generating a batteryTemperatureNotification.

    A value of '7fffffff'H indicates that no alarm will be
    raised for any value of object batteryTemperature."
 ::= { batteryEntry 24 }

```

batteryAlarmLowTemperature OBJECT-TYPE

```

SYNTAX      Integer32
UNITS       "deci-degrees Celsius"
MAX-ACCESS  read-write
STATUS      current
DESCRIPTION
    "This object provides the lower threshold value for object
    batteryTemperature.  If the value of object
    batteryTemperature falls below this threshold, a battery
    low temperature alarm will be raised.  The alarm procedure
    may include generating a batteryTemperatureNotification.

    A value of '7fffffff'H indicates that no alarm will be
    raised for any value of object batteryTemperature."
 ::= { batteryEntry 25 }

```

-- 2. Notifications

batteryChargingStateNotification NOTIFICATION-TYPE

```

OBJECTS      {
    batteryChargingOperState
}
STATUS      current
DESCRIPTION
    "This notification can be generated when a charging state
    of the battery (indicated by the value of object

```

batteryChargingOperState) is triggered by an event other than a write action to object batteryChargingAdminState. Such an event may, for example, be triggered by a local battery controller."

```
::= { batteryNotifications 1 }
```

batteryLowNotification NOTIFICATION-TYPE

```
OBJECTS      {
    batteryActualCharge,
    batteryActualVoltage,
    batteryCellIdentifier
}
STATUS       current
DESCRIPTION
```

"This notification can be generated when the current charge (batteryActualCharge) or the current voltage (batteryActualVoltage) of the battery falls below a threshold defined by object batteryAlarmLowCharge or object batteryAlarmLowVoltage, respectively.

The notification should not be sent again before the current voltage or the current charge becomes higher than the respective thresholds through charging before falling below the thresholds again.

If the low charge or voltage has been detected for a single cell or a set of cells of the battery and not for the entire battery, then object batteryCellIdentifier should be set to a value that identifies the cell or set of cells. Otherwise, the value of object batteryCellIdentifier should be set to the empty string when this notification is generated."

```
::= { batteryNotifications 2 }
```

batteryCriticalNotification NOTIFICATION-TYPE

```
OBJECTS      {
    batteryActualCharge,
    batteryActualVoltage,
    batteryCellIdentifier
}
STATUS       current
DESCRIPTION
```

"This notification can be generated when the current charge of the battery falls so low that it cannot provide a power supply function anymore and below and needs to be charged first before it can be used for power supply again. threshold defined by object batteryAlarmLowCharge or object batteryAlarmLowVoltage, respectively.

The notification should not be sent again before the battery charge has increased to a non-critical value.

If the critical state is caused a single cell or a set of cells of the battery, then object `batteryCellIdentifier` should be set to a value that identifies the cell or set of cells. Otherwise, the value of object `batteryCellIdentifier` should be set to the empty string when this notification is generated."

::= { batteryNotifications 3 }

`batteryTemperatureNotification` NOTIFICATION-TYPE

OBJECTS {
 batteryTemperature,
 batteryCellIdentifier
}

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This notification can be generated when the measured temperature (`batteryTemperature`) rises above the threshold defined by object `batteryAlarmHighTemperature` or falls below the threshold defined by object `batteryAlarmLowTemperature`.

If the low or high temperature has been detected for a single cell or a set of cells of the battery and not for the entire battery, then object `batteryCellIdentifier` should be set to a value that identifies the cell or set of cells. Otherwise, the value of object `batteryCellIdentifier` should be set to the empty string when this notification is generated."

::= { batteryNotifications 4 }

`batteryAgingNotification` NOTIFICATION-TYPE

OBJECTS {
 batteryActualCapacity,
 batteryChargingCycleCount,
 batteryCellIdentifier
}

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This notification can be generated when the actual capacity (`batteryActualCapacity`) falls below a threshold defined by object `batteryAlarmLowCapacity` or when the charging cycle count of the battery (`batteryChargingCycleCount`) exceeds the threshold defined by object `batteryAlarmHighCycleCount`.

If the aging has been detected for a single cell or a set of cells of the battery and not for the entire battery, then object batteryCellIdentifier should be set to a value that identifies the cell or set of cells. Otherwise, the value of object batteryCellIdentifier should be set to the empty string when this notification is generated."

::= { batteryNotifications 5 }

batteryConnectedNotification NOTIFICATION-TYPE

OBJECTS {
 batteryIdentifier
}

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This notification can be generated when it has been detected that a battery has been connected. The battery can be identified by the value of object batteryIdentifier as well as by the value of index entPhysicalIndex that is contained in the OID of object batteryIdentifier."

::= { batteryNotifications 6 }

batteryDisconnectedNotification NOTIFICATION-TYPE

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This notification can be generated when it has been detected that one or more batteries have been disconnected."

::= { batteryNotifications 7 }

-- 3. Conformance Information

batteryCompliances OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { batteryConformance 1 }
batteryGroups OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { batteryConformance 2 }

-- 3.1. Compliance Statements

batteryCompliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"The compliance statement for implementations of the BATTERY-MIB module.

A compliant implementation MUST implement the objects defined in the mandatory groups batteryDescriptionGroup

and batteryStatusGroup.

Note that compliance with this compliance statement requires compliance with the entity4CRCompliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE statement of the ENTITY-MIB (RFC6933)."

MODULE -- this module

```
MANDATORY-GROUPS {  
    batteryDescriptionGroup,  
    batteryStatusGroup  
}
```

GROUP batteryAlarmThresholdsGroup

DESCRIPTION

"A compliant implementation does not have to implement the batteryAlarmThresholdsGroup."

GROUP batteryNotificationsGroup

DESCRIPTION

"A compliant implementation does not have to implement the batteryNotificationsGroup."

GROUP batteryPerCellNotificationsGroup

DESCRIPTION

"A compliant implementation does not have to implement the batteryPerCellNotificationsGroup."

GROUP batteryAdminGroup

DESCRIPTION

"A compliant implementation does not have to implement the batteryAdminGroup."

OBJECT batteryAlarmLowCharge

MIN-ACCESS read-only

DESCRIPTION

"The agent is not required to support set operations to this object."

OBJECT batteryAlarmLowVoltage

MIN-ACCESS read-only

DESCRIPTION

"The agent is not required to support set operations to this object."

OBJECT batteryAlarmLowCapacity

MIN-ACCESS read-only

DESCRIPTION

"The agent is not required to support set

operations to this object."

OBJECT batteryAlarmHighCycleCount

MIN-ACCESS read-only

DESCRIPTION

"The agent is not required to support set operations to this object."

OBJECT batteryTemperatureNotification

MIN-ACCESS read-only

DESCRIPTION

"The agent is not required to support set operations to this object."

::= { batteryCompliances 1 }

-- 3.2. MIB Grouping

batteryDescriptionGroup OBJECT-GROUP

OBJECTS {

batteryIdentifier,

batteryFirmwareVersion,

batteryType,

batteryTechnology,

batteryDesignVoltage,

batteryNumberOfCells,

batteryDesignCapacity,

batteryMaxChargingCurrent,

batteryTrickleChargingCurrent

}

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"A compliant implementation MUST implement the objects contained in this group."

::= { batteryGroups 1 }

batteryStatusGroup OBJECT-GROUP

OBJECTS {

batteryActualCapacity,

batteryChargingCycleCount,

batteryLastChargingCycleTime,

batteryChargingOperState,

batteryActualCharge,

batteryActualVoltage,

batteryActualCurrent,

batteryTemperature

```
    }
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "A compliant implementation MUST implement the objects
        contained in this group."
    ::= { batteryGroups 2 }

batteryAdminGroup OBJECT-GROUP
    OBJECTS {
        batteryChargingAdminState
    }
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "A compliant implementation does not have to implement the
        object contained in this group."
    ::= { batteryGroups 3 }

batteryAlarmThresholdsGroup OBJECT-GROUP
    OBJECTS {
        batteryAlarmLowCharge,
        batteryAlarmLowVoltage,
        batteryAlarmLowCapacity,
        batteryAlarmHighCycleCount,
        batteryAlarmHighTemperature,
        batteryAlarmLowTemperature
    }
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "A compliant implementation does not have to implement the
        objects contained in this group."
    ::= { batteryGroups 4 }

batteryNotificationsGroup NOTIFICATION-GROUP
    NOTIFICATIONS {
        batteryChargingStateNotification,
        batteryLowNotification,
        batteryCriticalNotification,
        batteryAgingNotification,
        batteryTemperatureNotification,
        batteryConnectedNotification,
        batteryDisconnectedNotification
    }
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "A compliant implementation does not have to implement the
        notifications contained in this group."
    ::= { batteryGroups 5 }
```

```
batteryPerCellNotificationsGroup OBJECT-GROUP
  OBJECTS {
    batteryCellIdentifier
  }
  STATUS      current
  DESCRIPTION
    "A compliant implementation does not have to implement the
    object contained in this group."
  ::= { batteryGroups 6 }
END
```

5. Security Considerations

There are a number of management objects defined in this MIB module with a MAX-ACCESS clause of read-write. Such objects may be considered sensitive or vulnerable in some network environments. The support for SET operations in a non-secure environment without proper protection can have a negative effect on network operations. These are the tables and objects and their sensitivity/vulnerability:

- o batteryChargingAdminState
Setting the battery charging state can be beneficial for an operator for various reasons such as charging batteries when the price of electricity is low. However, setting the charging state can be used by an attacker to discharge batteries of devices and thereby switching these devices off if they are powered solely by batteries. In particular, if the batteryAlarmLowCharge and batteryAlarmLowVoltage can also be set, this attack will go unnoticed (i.e. no notifications are sent).
- o batteryAlarmLowCharge and batteryAlarmLowVoltage
These objects set the threshold for an alarm to be raised when the battery charge or voltage falls below the corresponding one of them. An attacker setting one of these alarm values can switch off the alarm by setting it to the 'off' value 0 or modify the alarm behavior by setting it to any other value. The result may be loss of data if the battery runs empty without warning to a recipient expecting such a notification.
- o batteryAlarmLowCapacity and batteryAlarmHighCycleCount
These objects set the threshold for an alarm to be raised when the battery becomes older and less performant than required for stable operation. An attacker setting this alarm value can switch off the alarm by setting it to the 'off' value 0 or modify the alarm behavior by setting it to any other value. This may either lead to a costly replacement of a working battery or too old or too weak batteries being used. The consequence of the latter could

e.g. be that a battery cannot provide power long enough between two scheduled charging actions causing the powered device to shut down and potentially lose data.

- o batteryAlarmHighTemperature and batteryAlarmLowTemperature
These objects set thresholds for an alarm to be raised when the battery rises above/falls below them. An attacker setting one of these alarm values can switch off these alarms by setting them to the 'off' value '7fffffff'H or modify the alarm behavior by setting them to any other value. The result may e.g. be an unnecessary shutdown of a device if batteryAlarmHighTemperature is set to too low or damage to the device by too high temperatures if switched off or set to too high values or by damage to the battery when it e.g. is being charged. Batteries can also be damaged e.g. in an attempt to charge them at too low temperatures.

Some of the readable objects in this MIB module (i.e., objects with a MAX-ACCESS other than not-accessible) may be considered sensitive or vulnerable in some network environments. It is thus important to control even GET and/or NOTIFY access to these objects and possibly to even encrypt the values of these objects when sending them over the network via SNMP. These are the tables and objects and their sensitivity/vulnerability:

All potentially sensible or vulnerable objects of this MIB module are in the batteryTable. In general, there are no serious operational vulnerabilities foreseen in case of an unauthorized read access to this table. However, privacy issues need to be considered. It may be a trade secret of the operator

- o how many batteries are installed in a managed node (batteryIndex)
- o how old these batteries are (batteryActualCapacity and batteryChargingCycleCount)
- o when the next replacement cycle for batteries can be expected (batteryAlarmLowCapacity and batteryAlarmHighCycleCount)
- o what battery type and make are used with which firmware version (batteryIdentifier, batteryFirmwareVersion, batteryType, and batteryTechnology)

SNMP versions prior to SNMPv3 did not include adequate security. Even if the network itself is secure (for example by using IPsec), there is no control as to who on the secure network is allowed to access and GET/SET (read/change/create/delete) the objects in this MIB module.

It is RECOMMENDED that implementers consider the security features as provided by the SNMPv3 framework (see [RFC3410], section 8), including full support for the SNMPv3 cryptographic mechanisms (for authentication and privacy).

Further, deployment of SNMP versions prior to SNMPv3 is NOT RECOMMENDED. Instead, it is RECOMMENDED to deploy SNMPv3 and to enable cryptographic security. It is then a customer/operator responsibility to ensure that the SNMP entity giving access to an instance of this MIB module is properly configured to give access to the objects only to those principals (users) that have legitimate rights to GET or SET (change/create/delete) them.

6. IANA Considerations

6.1. SMI Object Identifier Registration

The Battery MIB module defined in this document uses the following IANA-assigned OBJECT IDENTIFIER value recorded in the SMI Numbers registry:

Descriptor	OBJECT IDENTIFIER value
-----	-----
batteryMIB	{ mib-2 xxx }

[NOTE for IANA: Please allocate an object identifier at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/smi-numbers> for object batteryMIB.]

6.2. Battery Technology Registration

Object batteryTechnology defined in Section 4 reports battery technologies. Eighteen values for battery technologies have initially been defined. They are listed in a table in Section 3.2.

For ensuring extensibility of this list, IANA has created a registry for battery technologies at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/eman> and filled it with the initial list given in Section 3.2.

New assignments of numbers for battery technologies will be administered by IANA through Expert Review ([RFC5226]). Experts must check for sufficient relevance of a battery technology to be added.

[NOTE for IANA: Please create a new registry under <http://www.iana.org/assignments/eman> for battery types. Please fill the registry with values from the table in Section 3.2]

7. Open Issues

7.1. Battery replacement

How to deal with IDs in case of replacement of a battery? If a battery is replaced, shall the UUID in the entPhysicalTable be replaced by a new one?. Proposal: keep the UUID for the entity and use the batteryIdentifier to identify moving batteries.

7.2. Compliance statements for notifications

Compliance statements for Notifications need to be revisited and if necessary elaborated.

8. Acknowledgements

We would like to thank Steven Chew and Bill Mielke for their valuable input.

9. References

9.1. Normative References

- [RFC2119] Bradner, S., "Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels", BCP 14, RFC 2119, March 1997.
- [RFC5226] Narten, T. and H. Alvestrand, "Guidelines for Writing an IANA Considerations Section in RFCs", BCP 26, RFC 5226, May 2008.
- [RFC2578] McCloghrie, K., Ed., Perkins, D., Ed., and J. Schoenwaelder, Ed., "Structure of Management Information Version 2 (SMIv2)", STD 58, RFC 2578, April 1999.
- [RFC2579] McCloghrie, K., Ed., Perkins, D., Ed., and J. Schoenwaelder, Ed., "Textual Conventions for SMIv2", STD 58, RFC 2579, April 1999.
- [RFC2580] McCloghrie, K., Perkins, D., and J. Schoenwaelder, "Conformance Statements for SMIv2", STD 58, RFC 2580, April 1999.
- [RFC6933] Bierman, A., Romascanu, D., Quittek, J., and M. Chandramouli, "Entity MIB (Version 4)", RFC 6933, May 2013.

9.2. Informative References

- [I-D.ietf-eman-requirements]
Quittek, J., Chandramouli, M., Winter, R., Dietz, T., and
B. Claise, "Requirements for Energy Management",
draft-ietf-eman-requirements-14 (work in progress),
May 2013.
- [I-D.ietf-eman-framework]
Claise, B., Parello, J., Schoening, B., Quittek, J., and
B. Nordman, "Energy Management Framework",
draft-ietf-eman-framework-07 (work in progress),
February 2013.
- [I-D.ietf-eman-energy-monitoring-mib]
Chandramouli, M., Schoening, B., Quittek, J., Dietz, T.,
and B. Claise, "Power and Energy Monitoring MIB",
draft-ietf-eman-energy-monitoring-mib-05 (work in
progress), April 2013.
- [RFC1628] Case, J., "UPS Management Information Base", RFC 1628,
May 1994.
- [RFC3410] Case, J., Mundy, R., Partain, D., and B. Stewart,
"Introduction and Applicability Statements for Internet-
Standard Management Framework", RFC 3410, December 2002.
- [SBS] "Smart Battery Data Specification", Revision 1.1,
December 1998.

Authors' Addresses

Juergen Quittek
NEC Europe Ltd.
NEC Laboratories Europe
Network Research Division
Kurfuersten-Anlage 36
Heidelberg 69115
DE

Phone: +49 6221 4342-115
Email: quittek@neclab.eu

Rolf Winter
NEC Europe Ltd.
NEC Laboratories Europe
Network Research Division
Kurfuersten-Anlage 36
Heidelberg 69115
DE

Phone: +49 6221 4342-121
Email: Rolf.Winter@neclab.eu

Thomas Dietz
NEC Europe Ltd.
NEC Laboratories Europe
Network Research Division
Kurfuersten-Anlage 36
Heidelberg 69115
DE

Phone: +49 6221 4342-128
Email: Thomas.Dietz@neclab.eu

Network Working Group
Internet-Draft
Intended Status: Standards Track
Expires: January 12, 2014

J. Parello
B. Claise
Mouli Chandramouli
Cisco Systems, Inc.
July 12, 2013

Energy Object Context MIB
draft-ietf-eman-energy-aware-mib-09

Status of this Memo

This Internet-Draft is submitted to IETF in full conformance with the provisions of BCP 78 and BCP 79.

Internet-Drafts are working documents of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), its areas, and its working groups. Note that other groups may also distribute working documents as Internet-Drafts.

Internet-Drafts are draft documents valid for a maximum of six months and may be updated, replaced, or obsoleted by other documents at any time. It is inappropriate to use Internet-Drafts as reference material or to cite them other than as "work in progress."

The list of current Internet-Drafts can be accessed at <http://www.ietf.org/ietf/lid-abstracts.txt>

The list of Internet-Draft Shadow Directories can be accessed at <http://www.ietf.org/shadow.html>

This Internet-Draft will expire on January 12, 2014.

<Parello, Claise>

Expires February 12, 2013

[Page 1]

Copyright (c) 2012 IETF Trust and the persons identified as the document authors. All rights reserved.

This document is subject to BCP 78 and the IETF Trust's Legal Provisions Relating to IETF Documents (<http://trustee.ietf.org/license-info>) in effect on the date of publication of this document. Please review these documents carefully, as they describe your rights and restrictions with respect to this document. Code Components extracted from this document must include Simplified BSD License text as described in Section 4.e of the Trust Legal Provisions and are provided without warranty as described in the Simplified BSD License.

Abstract

This document defines a subset of a Management Information Base (MIB) for energy management of devices. The module addresses device identification, context information, and the relationships between reporting devices, remote devices, and monitoring devices.

Conventions used in this document

The key words "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHALL", "SHALL NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "NOT RECOMMENDED", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" in this document are to be interpreted as described in RFC 2119 [RFC2119].

Table of Contents

1. Introduction.....	3
1.1. Energy Management Document Overview.....	3
2. The Internet-Standard Management Framework.....	4
3. Requirements and Use Cases.....	4
4. Terminology.....	4
5. Architecture Concepts Applied to the MIB Module.....	6
5.1 Energy Object Identification.....	9
5.2 Energy Object Context.....	10
5.3 Links to Other Identifiers.....	10
5.4 Child: Energy Object Relationships.....	11
5.5 Parent: Energy Object Relationships.....	12
5.6 Energy Object Identity Persistence.....	12

Internet-Draft	< Energy Object Context MIB >	July 2013
6. MIB Definitions.....		13
7. Security Considerations.....		29
8. IANA Considerations.....		30
9. Acknowledgement.....		30
10. References.....		31
10.1. Normative References.....		31
10.2. Informative References.....		32

1. Introduction

The EMAN standards provide a specification for Energy Management. This document defines a subset of a Management Information Base (MIB) for use with network management protocols for Energy monitoring of network devices and devices attached to the network and possibly extending to devices in the industrial automation setting with a network interface.

The focus of the MIB module specified in this document is on the identification of Energy Objects and reporting the context and relationships of Energy Objects as defined in [EMAN-FMWK]. The module addresses Energy Object Identification, Energy Object Context, and Energy Object Relationships.

1.1. Energy Management Document Overview

This document specifies the ENERGY-OBJECT-CONTEXT-MIB module. This document is based on the Energy Management Framework [EMAN-FMWK] and meets the requirements on identification of Energy Objects and their context and relationships as specified in the Energy Management requirements [EMAN-REQ].

A second MIB module required by the [EMAN-FMWK], the Power and Energy Monitoring MIB [EMAN-MON-MIB], monitors the Energy Objects for Power States, for the Power and Energy consumption. Power State monitoring includes: retrieving Power States, Power State properties, current Power State, Power State transitions, and Power State statistics. In addition, this MIB module provides the Power Characteristics properties of the Power and Energy, along with optional characteristics.

The applicability statement document [EMAN-AS] provides the list of use cases, and describes the common aspects of between existing Energy standards and the EMAN standard, and shows how the EMAN framework relates to other frameworks.

For a detailed overview of the documents that describe the current Internet-Standard Management Framework, please refer to section 7 of RFC 3410 [RFC3410].

Managed objects are accessed via a virtual information store, termed the Management Information Base or MIB. MIB objects are generally accessed through the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). Objects in the MIB are defined using the mechanisms defined in the Structure of Management Information (SMI). This memo specifies MIB modules that are compliant with SMIv2, which is described in STD 58, RFC 2578 [RFC2578], STD 58, RFC 2579 [RFC2579] and STD 58, RFC 2580 [RFC2580].

3. Requirements and Use Cases

Firstly, to illustrate the importance of energy monitoring in networks and secondly to list some of the important areas to be addressed by the energy management Framework, several use cases and network scenarios are presented in the EMAN applicability statement document [EMAN-AS]. In addition, for each scenario, the target devices for energy management, and how those devices powered and metered are also presented. To address the network scenarios, requirements for power and energy monitoring for networking devices are specified in [EMAN-REQ]. Based on the requirements [EMAN-REQ], the [EMAN-FMWK] presents an solution approach.

Accordingly, the scope of the MIB module in this document is in accordance to the requirements specified in [EMAN-REQ] and [EMAN-FMWK].

4. Terminology

Please refer to [EMAN-FMWK] for the definitions of the following terminology used in this draft.

Device

Component

Energy Management System (EnMS)

ISO Energy Management System

Energy

Power

Demand

Power Characteristics

Electrical Equipment

Non-Electrical Equipment (Mechanical Equipment)

Energy Object

Electrical Energy Object

Non-Electrical Energy Object

Energy Monitoring

Energy Control

Provide Energy

Receive Energy

Power Interface

Power Inlet

Power Outlet

Energy Management Domain

Energy Object Identification

Energy Object Context

Energy Object Relationship

Aggregation Relationship

Power Source Relationship

Energy Object Parent

Energy Object Child

Power State

Power State Set

Nameplate Power

5. Architecture Concepts Applied to the MIB Module

This section describes the basic concepts specified in the Energy Management Architecture [EMAN-FMWK], with specific information related to the MIB module specified in this document.

The Energy Object Context MIB module defined in this document defines MIB objects for identification of Energy Objects, and reporting context and relationship of an Energy Object. The managed objects are contained in two tables eoTable and eoRelationTable.

The first table eoTable focuses on link to the other MIB modules, context of the Energy Object. The second table eoRelationTable specifies the relationships between Energy Objects. This is a simplified representation of relationship between Energy Objects.

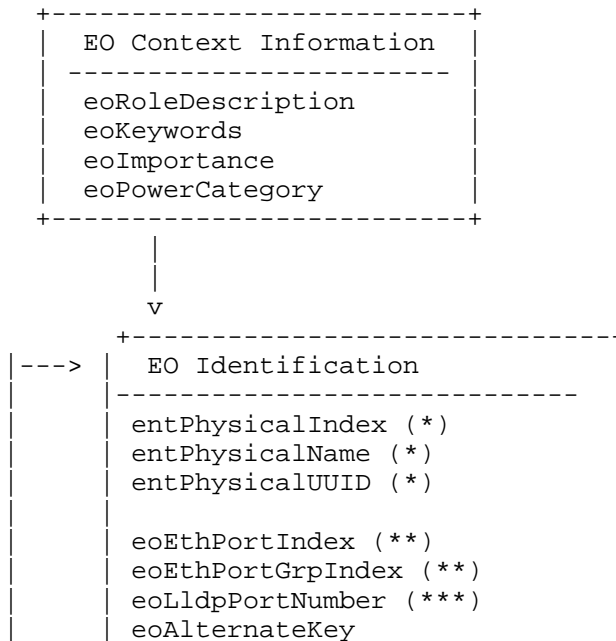
```
+-- eoTable(2)
|
|   +- eoEntry(1) [entPhysicalIndex]
|   |
|   |   +-- r-n PethPsePortIndexOrZero          eoEthPortIndex(1)
|   |   +-- r-n PethPsePortGroupIndexOrZero      eoEthPortGrpIndex(2)
|   |   +-- r-n LldpPortNumberOrZero             eoLldpPortNumber(3)
|   |   +-- rwn MacAddress                       eoMgmtMacAddress(4)
|   |   +-- r-n InetAddressType                  eoMgmtAddressType(5)
|   |   +-- r-n InetAddress                      eoMgmtAddress(6)
```

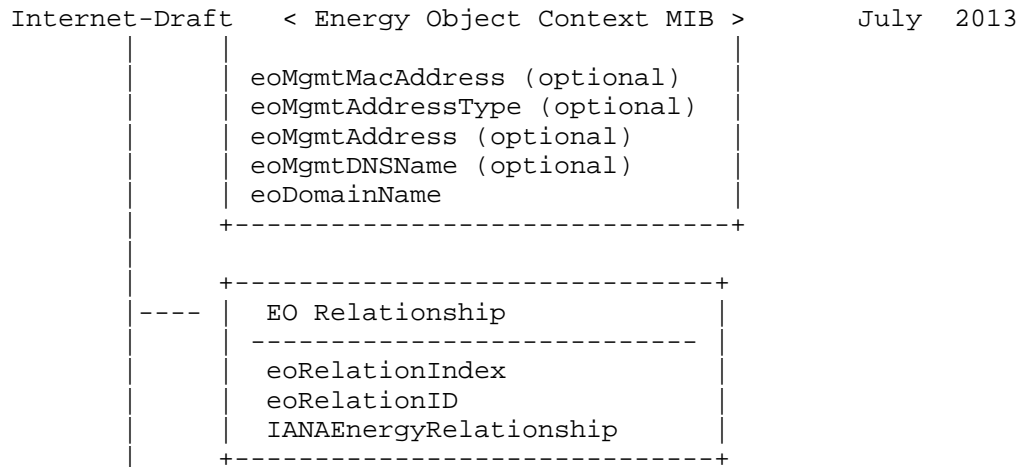
```

Internet-Draft    < Energy Object Context MIB >          July 2013
|
|   +-- r-n SnmpAdminString          eoMgmtDNSName(7)
|   +-- rwn SnmpAdminString          eoDomainName(8)
|   +-- rwn SnmpAdminString          eoRoleDescription(9)
|   +-- rwn EnergyObjectKeywordList  eoKeywords(10)
|   +-- rwn Integer32                eoImportance(11)
|   +-- r-n INTEGER                  eoPowerCategory(12)
|   +-- rwn SnmpAdminString          eoAlternateKey(13)
|
|   +- eoRelationTable(2)
|   |
|   |   +- eoRelationEntry(1) [entPhysicalIndex,
eoRelationIndex]
|   |   |
|   |   |   +-- --n Integer32          eoRelationIndex(1)
|   |   |   +-- --n UUIDorZero        eoRelationID(2)
|   |   |   +-- rwn IANAEnergyRelationship
eoRelationship(3)

```

The following UML diagram illustrates the relationship of the MIB objects in the eoTable, eoRelationTable that describe the identity, context and relationship of an Energy Object.





- (*) Compliance with the ENTITY MIB V4 [RFC6933]
- (**) Link with the Power over Ethernet MIB [RFC3621]
- (***) Link with LLDP MIBs [LLDP-MIB] [LLDP-MED-MIB]

Figure 1: MIB Objects Grouping

As displayed in figure 1, the MIB objects can be classified in different logical grouping of MIB objects.

- 1) The Energy Object Identification. See Section 5.1 "Energy Object Identification". Devices and their sub-components are characterized by the power-related attributes of a physical entity present in the ENTITY MIB [RFC6933].
- 2) The Context Information. See Section 5.2 "Energy Object Context"
- 3) The links to other MIB modules. See Section 5.3 "Links to other Identifiers"
- 4) The Energy Object Child Relationships specific information. See Section 5.4 "Child: Energy Objects Relationship."
- 5) The Energy Object Parent Relationships specific information. See Section 5.5 "Parent: Energy Objects Relationship."
- 6) The Energy Object Identity Persistence. See Section 5.6 "Energy Object Identity Persistence"

Refer to the "Energy Object Information" section in [EMAN-FMWK] for background information about Energy Objects.

Every Energy Object MUST implement the unique index, entPhysicalIndex, entPhysicalName and entPhysicalUUID from the ENTITY MIB [RFC6933]. Module Compliance with respect to entity4CRCompliance of ENTITY-MIB should be supported which require a limited number of objects supported (entPhysicalClass, entPhysicalName, entPhysicalUUID). entPhysicalIndex is used as index for the primary Energy Object information in the ENERGY-OBJECT-CONTEXT-MIB module.

Every Energy Object MUST have a printable name assigned to it. Energy Objects MUST implement the entPhysicalName object specified in the ENTITY-MIB [RFC6933], which must contain the Energy Object name.

For the ENERGY-OBJECT-CONTEXT-MIB compliance, every Energy Object instance MUST implement the entPhysicalUUID from the ENTITY MIB [RFC6933].

As displayed in [RFC4122], the following is an example of the string representation of a UUID as a URN: urn:uuid:f81d4fae-7dec-11d0-a765-00a0c91e6bf6.

For example, to understand the relationship between Energy Object Components and Energy Objects, the ENTITY-MIB physical containment tree [RFC6933] MUST be implemented. A second example deals with one of the ENTITY-MIB extensions: if the Energy Object temperature is required, the managed objects from the ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB [RFC3433] should be supported. When an Energy Object Parent acts as a Power Aggregator the Energy Object Parent and its Energy Object Child/Children MUST be members of the same Energy Management Domain, specified by the eoDomainName MIB Object.

Each Energy Object MUST belong to a single Energy Management Domain or in other words, an Energy Object cannot belong to more than one Energy Management Domain. Refer to the "Energy Management Domain" section in [EMAN-FMWK] for background information. The eoDomainName, which is an element of the eoTable, is a read-write MIB object. The Energy Management Domain should map 1-1 with a metered or sub-metered portion of the network. The Energy Management Domain MUST be configured on the Energy Object Parent. The Energy Object Children MAY inherit

Internet-Draft < Energy Object Context MIB > July 2013
the some of the domain parameters (possibly domain name, some of
the context information such as role or keywords, importance)
from the Energy Object Parent or the Energy Management Domain
MAY be configured directly in an Energy Object Child.

5.2 Energy Object Context

Refer to the "Energy Object Context" section in [EMAN-FMWK] for
background information.

An Energy Object must provide a value for eoImportance in the
range of 1...100 to help differentiate the use or relative value
of the device. The importance range is from 1 (least important)
to 100 (most important). The default importance value is 1.

An Energy Object can provide a set of eoKeywords. These keywords
are a list of tags that can be used for grouping and summary
reporting within or between Energy Management Domains.

An Energy Object can be classified based on the physical
properties of the Energy Object. That Energy Object can be
classified as consuming power or supplying power to other
devices or that Energy Object can perform both of those
functions and finally, an Energy Object can be a passive meter.

Additionally, an Energy Object can provide an eoRoleDescription
string that indicates the purpose the Energy Object serves in
the network.

5.3 Links to Other Identifiers

While the entPhysicalIndex is the primary index for all MIB
objects in the ENERGY-OBJECT-CONTEXT-MIB module, the Energy
Management Systems (EnMS) must be able to make the link with the
identifier(s) in other supported MIB modules.

If the Energy Object is a PoE port, and if the Power over
Ethernet MIB [RFC3621] is supported by the Energy Object SNMP
agent, then the Energy Object eoethPortIndex and
eoethPortGrpIndex MUST contain the values of pethPsePortIndex
and pethPsePortGroupIndex [RFC3621].

The Energy Object eoLldpPortNumber MUST contain the
lldpLocPortNum from the LLDP MIB [LLDP-MIB], if the LLDP-MED
MIB is supported on the Energy Object SNMP agent.

The intent behind the links to the other MIB module identifier(s) is to correlate the instances in the different MIB modules. This will allow the ENERGY-OBJECT-CONTEXT-MIB MIB module to reference other MIB modules in cases where the Power over Ethernet and the LLDP MIB modules are supported by the SNMP agent. Some use cases may not implement any of these two MIB modules for the Energy Objects. However, in situation where any of these two MIB modules are implemented, the EnMS must be able to correlate the instances in the different MIB modules.

The eoAlternateKey alternate key object specifies a manufacturer defined string that can be used to identify the Energy Object. Since EnMS may need to correlate objects across management systems, this alternate key is provided to facilitate such a link. This optional value is intended as a foreign key or alternate identifier for a manufacturer or EnMS to use to correlate the unique Energy Object Id in other systems or namespaces. If an alternate key is not available or is not applicable then the value is the zero-length string.

5.4 Child: Energy Object Relationships

Refer to the "Energy Object Parent and Child" section in [EMAN-FMWK] for the definition and background information. In order to link the Energy Object Child and the Energy Object Parent, a separate table (eoRelationTable) has been introduced in this MIB module. The following relationships between Energy objects have been considered in the eoRelationTable.

Metering Relationship -> meteredBy, metering

Power Source Relationship -> poweredBy, powering

Aggregation Relationship -> aggregatedBy, aggregating

Each Energy object can have one or more Energy Object relationships with other Energy Objects. Depending on the direction of the relationship, an Energy Object can be considered as an Energy Object Parent or an Energy Object Child. The relationship between the Energy Objects is specified with an arbitrary index and the UUID of the remote Energy Object. The UUID MUST comply to the RFC 4122 specifications. It is

Internet-Draft < Energy Object Context MIB > July 2013
important to note that it is possible that an Energy Object may
not have an Energy Object relationship with other Energy
Objects.

Since the communication between the Energy Object Parent and
Energy Object Child may not be SNMP and is left to the choice of
the device manufacturer (as defined in EMAN-FMWK), an Energy
Object Child can have additional MIB objects that can be used
for easier identification by the EnMS. The optional objects
eoMgmtMacAddress, eoMgmtAddressType eoMgmtDNSName can be used to
help identify the relationship between the child and other NMS
objects. These objects can be used as an alternate key to help
link the Energy Object with other keyed information that may be
stored within the EnMS(s). For the optional objects that may
not be included in some vendor implementations, the expected
behavior when those objects are polled is noSuchInstance
response.

5.5 Parent: Energy Object Relationships

When the Energy Object is an Energy Object Parent, the
relationship table specifies the relationships to every Energy
Object children. The explicit relationship between the Energy
Object parent and each Energy Object child can be powering,
metering and aggregating.

5.6 Energy Object Identity Persistence

In some situations, the Energy Object identity information
should be persistent even after a device reload. For example, in
a static setup where a switch monitors a series of connected PoE
phones, there is a clear benefit for the EnMS if the Energy
Object Identification and all associated information persist, as
it saves a network discovery. However, in other situations,
such as a wireless access point monitoring the mobile user PCs,
there is not much advantage to persist the Energy Object
Information. The identity information of an Energy Object
should be persisted and there is value in the writable MIB
objects persisted.

```
-- *****  
--  
--  
-- This MIB is used for describing the identity and the  
-- context information of Energy Objects in network  
--  
-- *****
```

ENERGY-OBJECT-CONTEXT-MIB DEFINITIONS ::= BEGIN

IMPORTS

MODULE-IDENTITY,
OBJECT-TYPE,
mib-2,
Integer32

FROM SNMPv2-SMI

TEXTUAL-CONVENTION, MacAddress, TruthValue

FROM SNMPv2-TC

MODULE-COMPLIANCE,
OBJECT-GROUP

FROM SNMPv2-CONF

SnmpAdminString

FROM SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB

InetAddressType, InetAddress

FROM INET-ADDRESS-MIB

entPhysicalIndex

FROM ENTITY-MIB

UUIDorZero

FROM UUID-TC-MIB

IANAEnergyRelationship

FROM IANA-ENERGY-RELATION-MIB;

energyAwareMIB MODULE-IDENTITY

LAST-UPDATED "201306300000Z"

ORGANIZATION "IETF EMAN Working Group"

CONTACT-INFO

"WG Charter:

<http://datatracker.ietf.org/wg/eman/charter/>

Mailing Lists:

General Discussion: eman@ietf.org

Internet-Draft < Energy Object Context MIB > July 2013
To Subscribe: <https://www.ietf.org/mailman/listinfo/eman>
Archive: <http://www.ietf.org/mail-archive/web/eman>

Editors:

John Parello
Cisco Systems, Inc.
3550 Cisco Way
San Jose, California 95134
US
Phone: +1 408 525 2339
Email: jparello@cisco.com

Benoit Claise
Cisco Systems, Inc.
De Kleetlaan 6a b1
Degem 1831
Belgium
Phone: +32 2 704 5622
Email: bclaise@cisco.com

Mouli Chandramouli
Cisco Systems, Inc.
Sarjapur Outer Ring Road
Bangalore 560103
IN
Phone: +91 80 4429 2409
Email: moulchan@cisco.com

DESCRIPTION

"This MIB is used for describing the identity and the
context information of Energy Objects"

REVISION

"201306300000Z"

DESCRIPTION

"Initial version, published as RFC XXXX."

::= { mib-2 xxxxxx }

energyAwareMIBNotifs OBJECT IDENTIFIER

::= { energyAwareMIB 0 }

```
energyAwareMIBObjects OBJECT IDENTIFIER
    ::= { energyAwareMIB 2 }
```

```
energyAwareMIBConform OBJECT IDENTIFIER
    ::= { energyAwareMIB 3 }
```

-- Textual Conventions

```
PethPsePortIndexOrZero ::= TEXTUAL-CONVENTION
```

```
DISPLAY-HINT "d"
```

```
STATUS current
```

```
DESCRIPTION
```

"This textual convention is an extension of the pethPsePortIndex convention, which defines a greater than zero value used to identify a power Ethernet PSE port. This extension permits the additional value of zero. The semantics of the value zero are object-specific and must, therefore, be defined as part of the description of any object that uses this syntax. Examples of the usage of this extension are situations where none or all physical entities need to be referenced."

```
SYNTAX Integer32 (0..2147483647)
```

```
PethPsePortGroupIndexOrZero ::= TEXTUAL-CONVENTION
```

```
DISPLAY-HINT "d"
```

```
STATUS current
```

```
DESCRIPTION
```

"This textual convention is an extension of the pethPsePortGroupIndex convention from the Power Over Ethernet MIB [RFC3621], which defines a greater than zero value used to identify group containing the port to which a power Ethernet PSE is connected. This extension permits the additional value of zero. The semantics of the value zero are object-specific and must, therefore, be defined as part of the description of any object that uses this syntax. Examples of the usage of this extension are situations where none or all physical entities need to be referenced."

```
SYNTAX Integer32 (0..2147483647)
```

LldpPortNumberOrZero ::= TEXTUAL-CONVENTION

DISPLAY-HINT "d"

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This textual convention is an extension of the LldpPortNumber convention specified in the LLDP MIB, which defines a greater than zero value used to uniquely identify each port contained in the chassis (that is known to the LLDP agent) by a port number. This extension permits the additional value of zero. The semantics of the value zero are object-specific and must, therefore, be defined as part of the description of any object that uses this syntax. Examples of the usage of this extension are situations where none or all physical entities need to be referenced."

SYNTAX Integer32(0..4096)

EnergyObjectKeywordList ::= TEXTUAL-CONVENTION

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"A list of keywords that can be used to group Energy Objects for reporting or searching. If multiple keywords are present, then this string will contain all the keywords separated by the ',' character. All alphanumeric characters and symbols (other than a comma), such as #, (, \$, !, and &, are allowed. White spaces before and after the commas are ignored, as well as within a keyword itself.

For example, if an Energy Object were to be tagged with the keyword values 'hospitality' and 'guest', then the keyword list will be 'hospitality,guest'."

SYNTAX OCTET STRING (SIZE (0..2048))

EnergyRelations ::= TEXTUAL-CONVENTION

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object specifies relationship between Energy Objects. For example, poweredby relationship indicates, Energy Object A is powered by Energy Object B. From the

```

Internet-Draft    < Energy Object Context MIB >          July 2013
                  point of view of Energy Object B, it is powering Energy
                  Object A. "
SYNTAX            BITS {
                    none (0),          --
                    poweredby(1),      -- power relationship
                    powering(2),
                    meteredby(3),      -- meter relationship
                    metering(4),
                    aggregatedby(7),    -- aggregation relationship
                    aggregating(8)
                }

-- Objects

eoTable OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          SEQUENCE OF EoEntry
    MAX-ACCESS      not-accessible
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This table lists Energy Objects."
        ::= { energyAwareMIBObjects 2 }

eoEntry OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          EoEntry
    MAX-ACCESS      not-accessible
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "An entry describes the attributes of an Energy Object.
        Whenever a new Energy Object is added or an existing
        Energy Object is deleted, a row in the eoTable is added
        or deleted."

    INDEX           {entPhysicalIndex }
    ::= { eoTable 1 }

EoEntry ::= SEQUENCE {
    eoEthPortIndex          PethPsePortIndexOrZero,
    eoEthPortGrpIndex       PethPsePortGroupIndexOrZero,
    eoLldpPortNumber        LldpPortNumberOrZero,
    eoMgmtMacAddress         MacAddress,
    eoMgmtAddressType        InetAddressType,
    eoMgmtAddress            InetAddress,
    eoMgmtDNSName            SnmpAdminString,
    eoDomainName             SnmpAdminString,

```

```

    eoRoleDescription      SnmpAdminString,
    eoKeywords             EnergyObjectKeywordList,
    eoImportance           Integer32,
    eoPowerCategory        INTEGER,
    eoAlternateKey          SnmpAdminString

```

```

    }

```

```

eoEthPortIndex    OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          PethPsePortIndexOrZero
    MAX-ACCESS      read-only
    STATUS           current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This variable uniquely identifies the power Ethernet
        port to which the attached device is connected [RFC3621].
        In addition, PoE MIB should be instantiated on the
        device. If such a power Ethernet port cannot be specified
        or is not known then the object is zero."
    ::= { eoEntry 1 }

```

```

eoEthPortGrpIndex OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          PethPsePortGroupIndexOrZero
    MAX-ACCESS      read-only
    STATUS           current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This variable uniquely identifies the group containing
        the port to which a power Ethernet PSE is connected
        [RFC3621]. In addition, PoE MIB should be instantiated on
        the device. If such a group cannot be specified or is not
        known then the object is zero."
    ::= { eoEntry 2 }

```

```

eoLldpPortNumber  OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          LldpPortNumberOrZero
    MAX-ACCESS      read-only
    STATUS           current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This variable uniquely identifies the port component
        (contained in the local chassis with the LLDP agent) as
        defined by the lldpLocPortNum in the [LLDP-MIB] and
        [LLDP-MED-MIB]. In addition, LLDP MIB should be
        instantiated on the device If such a port number cannot
        be specified or is not known then the object is zero."
    ::= { eoEntry 3 }

```

```

eoMgmtMacAddress  OBJECT-TYPE

```

Internet-Draft < Energy Object Context MIB > July 2013

SYNTAX MacAddress
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
 "This object specifies a MAC address of the Energy Object. This object typically only applies to Energy Object Children. This object can be used as an alternate key to help link the Energy Object with other keyed information that may be stored within the EnMS(s). The eoMgmtMacAddress MIB object SHOULD be implemented for Energy Object Children, and MAY be implemented for Energy Object Parents."
::= { eoEntry 4 }

eoMgmtAddressType OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX InetAddressType
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
 "This object specifies the eoMgmtAddress type, i.e. an IPv4 address or an IPv6 address. This object MUST be populated when eoMgmtAddress is populated. The eoMgmtAddressType MIB object SHOULD be implemented for Energy Object Children, and MAY be implemented for Energy Object Parents."
::= { eoEntry 5 }

eoMgmtAddress OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX InetAddress
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
 "This object specifies the management address as an IPv4 address or IPv6 address of Energy Object. The IP address type, i.e. IPv4 or IPv6, is determined by the eoMgmtAddressType value. This object can be used as an alternate key to help link the Energy Object with other keyed information that may be stored within the EnMS(s). The eoMgmtAddress MIB object SHOULD be implemented for Energy Object Children, and MAY be implemented for Energy Object Parents."
::= { eoEntry 6 }

eoMgmtDNSName OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX SnmpAdminString

MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object specifies the DNS name of the eoMgmtAddress.
This object can be used as an alternate key to help link
the Energy Object with other keyed information that may
be stored within the EnMS(s). The eoMgmtDNSName MIB
objects SHOULD be implemented for Energy Object Children,
and MAY be implemented for Energy Object Parents."

::= { eoEntry 7 }

eoDomainName OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX SnmpAdminString
MAX-ACCESS read-write
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object specifies the name of an Energy Management
Domain for the Energy Object. This object specifies a
zero-length string value if no Energy Management Domain
name is configured. The value of eoDomainName must remain
constant at least from one re-initialization of the
entity local management system to the next re-
initialization."

::= { eoEntry 8 }

eoRoleDescription OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX SnmpAdminString
MAX-ACCESS read-write
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object specifies an administratively assigned name
to indicate the purpose an Energy Object serves in the
network.

For example, we can have a phone deployed to a lobby with
eoRoleDescription as 'Lobby phone'.

This object specifies the value is the zero-length string
value if no role description is configured.

The value of eoRoleDescription must remain constant at
least from one re-initialization of the entity local
management system to the next re-initialization. "

::= { eoEntry 9 }

eoKeywords OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX EnergyObjectKeywordList
MAX-ACCESS read-write
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object specifies a list of keywords that can be used to group Energy Objects for reporting or searching. The value is the zero-length string if no keywords have been configured. If multiple keywords are present, then this string will contain all the keywords separated by the ',' character. For example, if an Energy Object were to be tagged with the keyword values 'hospitality' and 'guest', then the keyword list will be 'hospitality,guest'.

If write access is implemented and a value is written into the instance, the agent must retain the supplied value in the eoKeywords instance associated with the same physical entity for as long as that entity remains instantiated. This includes instantiations across all re-initializations/reboots of the local management agent. "

::= { eoEntry 10 }

eoImportance OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32 (1..100)
MAX-ACCESS read-write
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object specifies a ranking of how important the Energy Object is (on a scale of 1 to 100) compared with other Energy Objects in the same Energy Management Domain. The ranking should provide a business or operational context for the Energy Object as compared to other similar Energy Objects. This ranking could be used as input for policy-based network management.

Although network managers must establish their own ranking, the following is a broad recommendation:

90 to 100 Emergency response
80 to 90 Executive or business critical
70 to 79 General or Average
60 to 69 Staff or support
40 to 59 Public or guest
1 to 39 Decorative or hospitality

Internet-Draft < Energy Object Context MIB > July 2013
The value of eoImportance must remain constant at least
from one re-initialization of the entity local
management system to the next re-initialization. "

DEFVAL { 1 }
::= { eoEntry 11 }

eoPowerCategory OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX INTEGER {
 consumer(0),
 producer(1),
 consumerproducer(2),
 meter(3)
 }

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object describes the Energy Object category, which
indicates the expected behavior or physical property of
the Energy Object, based on its design. An Energy Object
can be a consumer(0), producer(1), or consumerproducer
(2) or meter (3).

There are devices with a dual mode - consuming energy and
producing of energy and those are identified as
consumerproducer.

In some cases, a meter is required to measure the power
consumption. In such a case, this meter Energy Object
category is meter(3). "

::= { eoEntry 12 }

eoAlternateKey OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX SnmpAdminString

MAX-ACCESS read-write

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object specifies a manufacturer defined string that
can be used to identify the Energy Object. Since Energy
Management Systems (EnMS) and Network Management Systems
(NMS) may need to correlate objects across management
systems, this alternate key is provided to provide such a
link. This optional value is intended as a foreign key or
alternate identifier for a manufacturer or EnMS/NMS to
use to correlate the unique Energy Object Id in other
systems or namespaces. If an alternate key is not
available or is not applicable then the value is the
zero-length string.

The value of eoAlternateKey must remain constant at

Internet-Draft < Energy Object Context MIB > July 2013
 least from one re-initialization of the entity local
 management system to the next re-initialization. "
 ::= { eoEntry 13 }

eoRelationTable OBJECT-TYPE
 SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF EoRelationEntry
 MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
 STATUS current
 DESCRIPTION
 "This table describes the relationships between Energy Objects."
 ::= { energyAwareMIBObjects 3 }

eoRelationEntry OBJECT-TYPE
 SYNTAX EoRelationEntry
 MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
 STATUS current
 DESCRIPTION
 "An entry in this table describes the relationship between
 Energy objects."
 INDEX { entPhysicalIndex, eoRelationIndex }
 ::= { eoRelationTable 1 }

EoRelationEntry ::= SEQUENCE {
 eoRelationIndex Integer32,
 eoRelationID UUIDorZero,
 eoRelationship IANAEnergyRelationship
 }

eoRelationIndex OBJECT-TYPE
 SYNTAX Integer32 (0..2147483647)
 MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
 STATUS current
 DESCRIPTION
 "This object is an arbitrary index to identify the Energy Object
 related to another Energy Object"
 ::= { eoRelationEntry 1 }

eoRelationID OBJECT-TYPE
 SYNTAX UUIDorZero
 MAX-ACCESS read-only
 STATUS current
 DESCRIPTION

"This object specifies the Universally Unique Identifier (UUID)
of the peer (other) Energy Object. The UUID must comply the

If UUID of the energy object is unknown or non-existent,
the eoRelationID will be set to a zero-length string
instead."

REFERENCE

 "RFC 6933, Entity MIB - version 4, May 2013 "
 ::= { eoRelationEntry 2 }

eoRelationship OBJECT-TYPE
 SYNTAX IANAEnergyRelationship
 MAX-ACCESS read-write
 STATUS current
 DESCRIPTION

"This object describes the relations between Energy objects. For
each Energy object, the relations between the other Energy
objects are specified using the bitmap. If the Energy Object is
a Parent and has no other relations, none(0) is specified."

 ::= { eoRelationEntry 3 }

-- Conformance

energyAwareMIBCompliances OBJECT IDENTIFIER
 ::= { energyAwareMIBObjects 5 }

energyAwareMIBGroups OBJECT IDENTIFIER
 ::= { energyAwareMIBObjects 6 }

energyAwareMIBFullCompliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE
 STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

 "When this MIB is implemented with support for
 read-write, then such an implementation can
 claim full compliance. Such devices can then
 be both monitored and configured with this MIB."

MODULE -- this module
MANDATORY-GROUPS {
 energyAwareMIBTableGroup,
 energyAwareRelationTableGroup
 }

GROUP energyAwareOptionalMIBTableGroup

DESCRIPTION

"A compliant implementation does not have to implement. Module Compliance of ENTITY-MIB with respect to entity4CRCompliance should be supported. "

::= { energyAwareMIBCompliances 1 }

energyAwareMIBReadOnlyCompliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"When this MIB is implemented without support for read-write (i.e. in read-only mode), then such an implementation can claim read-only compliance.

Such a device can then be monitored but cannot be Configured with this MIB.

Module Compliance of ENTITY-MIB with respect to entity4CRCompliance should be supported."

MODULE -- this module

MANDATORY-GROUPS {

 energyAwareMIBTableGroup,

 energyAwareRelationTableGroup

}

GROUP energyAwareOptionalMIBTableGroup

DESCRIPTION

"A compliant implementation does not have to implement the managed objects in this GROUP.

Module Compliance of ENTITY-MIB with respect to entity4CRCompliance should be supported. "

::= { energyAwareMIBCompliances 2 }

-- Units of Conformance

energyAwareMIBTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP

OBJECTS {

```
        eoDomainName,
        eoRoleDescription,
        eoAlternateKey,
        eoKeywords,
        eoImportance,
        eoPowerCategory
    }
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This group contains the collection of all the objects
        related to the EnergyObject.
        Module Compliance of ENTITY-MIB
        with respect to entity4CRCompliance should
        be supported. "
    ::= { energyAwareMIBGroups 1 }

energyAwareOptionalMIBTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP
    OBJECTS
        {
            eoEthPortIndex,
            eoEthPortGrpIndex,
            eoLldpPortNumber,
            eoMgmtMacAddress,
            eoMgmtAddressType,
            eoMgmtAddress,
            eoMgmtDNSName
        }
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This group contains the collection of all the objects
        related to the Energy Object."
    ::= { energyAwareMIBGroups 2 }

energyAwareRelationTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP
    OBJECTS
        {
            -- Note that object eoRelationIndex is not
            -- included since it is not-accessible

            eoRelationID,
            eoRelationship
        }
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This group contains the collection of all objects
        specifying the relationship between Energy Objects."
    ::= { energyAwareMIBGroups 3 }
```

IANA-ENERGY-RELATION-MIB DEFINITIONS ::= BEGIN
IMPORTS

MODULE-IDENTITY, mib-2
FROM SNMPv2-SMI
TEXTUAL-CONVENTION
FROM SNMPv2-TC;

ianaEnergyRelationMIB MODULE-IDENTITY
LAST-UPDATED "201306300000Z" -- June 30, 2013
ORGANIZATION "IANA"
CONTACT-INFO "
Internet Assigned Numbers Authority
Postal: ICANN
4676 Admiralty Way, Suite 330
Marina del Rey, CA 90292
Tel: +1-310-823-9358
EMail: iana@iana.org"

DESCRIPTION

"This MIB module defines a TEXTUAL-CONVENTION that
describes the relationships between Energy Objects.

Copyright (C) The IETF Trust (2013).

The initial version of this MIB module was published in
RFC yyyy; for full legal notices see the RFC itself.
Supplementary information may be available at
<http://www.ietf.org/copyrights/ianamib.html>"

REVISION "201306300000Z" -- June 30, 2013
DESCRIPTION "Initial version of this MIB as published in
RFC yyyy."
::= { mib-2 xxx }

-- RFC Editor, please replace xxx with the IANA allocation
-- for this MIB module and yyyy with the number of the
-- approved RFC

IANAEnergyRelationship ::= TEXTUAL-CONVENTION
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"An enumerated value specifies the type of
relationship between Energy Objects.

The enumeration 'poweredBy' is applicable if the
Energy Object A is poweredBy Energy Object B.

The enumeration 'powering' is applicable if the
Energy Object A is powering Energy Object B.

The enumeration 'meteredBy' is applicable if the
Energy Object A is meteredBy Energy Object B.

The enumeration 'metering' is applicable if the
Energy Object A is metering Energy Object B.

The enumeration 'aggregatedBy' is applicable if the
Energy Object A is aggregatedBy Energy Object B.

The enumeration 'aggregating' is applicable if the
Energy Object A is aggregating Energy Object B."

SYNTAX INTEGER {

poweredBy(1), -- power relationship
powering(2),
meteredBy(3), -- meter relationship
metering(4),
aggregatedBy(5), -- aggregation relationship
aggregating(6)
}

7. Security Considerations

Some of the readable objects in these MIB modules (i.e., objects with a MAX-ACCESS other than not-accessible) may be considered sensitive or vulnerable in some network environments. It is thus important to control even GET and/or NOTIFY access to these objects and possibly to even encrypt the values of these objects when sending them over the network via SNMP.

There are a number of management objects defined in these MIB modules with a MAX-ACCESS clause of read-write and/or read-create. Such objects MAY be considered sensitive or vulnerable in some network environments. The support for SET operations in a non-secure environment without proper protection can have a negative effect on network operations. The following are the tables and objects and their sensitivity/vulnerability:

- . Unauthorized changes to the eoDomainName, entPhysicalName, eoRoleDescription, eoKeywords, and/or eoImportance MAY disrupt power and energy collection, and therefore any predefined policies defined in the network.

SNMP versions prior to SNMPv3 did not include adequate security. Even if the network itself is secure (for example, by using IPsec), there is still no secure control over who on the secure network is allowed to access and GET/SET (read/change/create/delete) the objects in these MIB modules.

It is RECOMMENDED that implementers consider the security features as provided by the SNMPv3 framework (see [RFC3410], section 8), including full support for the SNMPv3 cryptographic mechanisms (for authentication and privacy).

Further, deployment of SNMP versions prior to SNMPv3 is NOT RECOMMENDED. Instead, it is RECOMMENDED to deploy SNMPv3 and to enable cryptographic security. It is then a customer/operator responsibility to ensure that the SNMP entity giving access to an instance of these MIB modules is properly configured to give access to the objects only to those principals (users) that have legitimate rights to GET or SET (change/create/delete) them.

The MIB module in this document uses the following IANA-assigned OBJECT IDENTIFIER values recorded in the SMI Numbers registry:

Descriptor -----	OBJECT IDENTIFIER value -----
energyAwareMIB	{ mib-2 xxx }

Additions to this MIB module are subject to Expert Review [RFC5226], i.e., review by one of a group of experts designated by an IETF Area Director. The group of experts MUST check the requested MIB objects for completeness and accuracy of the description. Requests for MIB objects that duplicate the functionality of existing objects SHOULD be declined. The smallest available OID SHOULD be assigned to a new MIB objects. The specification of new MIB objects SHOULD follow the structure specified in Section 6 and MUST be published using a well-established and persistent publication medium.

This document defines the first version of the IANA-maintained IANA-ENERGY-RELATION-MIB module, which allows new definitions of relationships between Energy Objects.

A Specification Required as defined in RFC 5226 [RFC5226], is REQUIRED for each modification of the energy relationships.

The MIB module in this document uses the following IANA-assigned OBJECT IDENTIFIER values recorded in the SMI Numbers registry:

Descriptor -----	OBJECT IDENTIFIER value -----
ianaEnergyRelationMIB	{ mib-2 xxx }

9. Acknowledgement

We would like to thank Juergen Quittek and Juergen Schoenwalder for their suggestions on the new design of eoRelationTable which was a proposed solution for the open issue on the representation of Energy Object children as a UUIDlist.

Many thanks to Juergen Quittek for many comments on the wording, text and design of the MIB thus resulting in an improved draft.

Internet-Draft < Energy Object Context MIB > July 2013
Many thanks to Alan Luchuk for the review of the MIB and his
comments.

In addition the authors thank Bill Mielke for his multiple
reviews, Brad Schoening and Juergen Schoenwaelder for their
suggestions and Michael Brown for dramatically improving this
draft.

10. References

10.1. Normative References

- [RFC2119] S. Bradner, Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate
Requirement Levels, BCP 14, RFC 2119, March 1997.
- [RFC2578] McCloghrie, K., Ed., Perkins, D., Ed., and J.
Schoenwaelder, Ed., "Structure of Management
Information Version 2 (SMIv2)", STD 58, RFC 2578, April
1999.
- [RFC2579] McCloghrie, K., Ed., Perkins, D., Ed., and J.
Schoenwaelder, Ed., "Textual Conventions for SMIv2",
STD 58, RFC 2579, April 1999.
- [RFC2580] McCloghrie, K., Perkins, D., and J. Schoenwaelder,
"Conformance Statements for SMIv2", STD 58, RFC 2580,
April 1999.
- [RFC3621] Berger, A., and D. Romascanu, "Power Ethernet MIB",
RFC3621, December 2003.
- [RFC4122] Leach, P., Mealling, M., and R. Salz, "A Universally
Unique Identifier (UUID) URN Namespace ", RFC 4122,
July 2005.
- [RFC6933] Bierman, A. Romascanu, D. Quittek, J. and M.
Chandramouli, "Entity MIB (Version 4)", RFC 6933, May
2013.
- [LLDP-MIB] IEEE 802.1AB-2005, "Management Information Base
module for LLDP configuration, statistics, local system
data and remote systems data components", May 2005.

Internet-Draft < Energy Object Context MIB > July 2013
[LLDP-MED-MIB] ANSI/TIA-1057, "The LLDP Management Information
Base extension module for TIA-TR41.4 media endpoint
discovery information", July 2005.

[EMAN-MON-MIB] M. Chandramouli, Schoening, B., Quittek, J.,
Dietz, T., and B. Claise "Power and Energy Monitoring
MIB", draft-ietf-eman-energy-monitoring-mib-05, April
2013.

10.2. Informative References

[RFC3410] Case, J., Mundy, R., Partain, D., and B. Stewart,
"Introduction and Applicability Statements for Internet
Standard Management Framework", RFC 3410, December
2002.

[RFC3433] Bierman, A., Romascanu, D., and K.C. Norseth, "Entity
Sensor Management Information Base", RFC 3433, December
2002.

[RFC5226] Narten, T. Alverstrand, H., A. and K. McCloghrie,
"Guidelines for Writing an IANA Considerations Section
in RFCs ", BCP 26, RFC 5226, May 2008.

[EMAN-REQ] Quittek, J., Winter, R., Dietz, T., Claise, B., and
M. Chandramouli, "Requirements for Energy Management",
draft-ietf-eman-requirements-14, work in progress, May
2013.

[EMAN-FMWK] Claise, B., Parello, J., Schoening, B., and J.
Quittek, "Energy Management Framework", draft-ietf-
eman-framework-08, work in progress, July 2013.

[EMAN-AS] Schoening, B., Chandramouli, M, and B. Nordman,
"Energy Management (EMAN) Applicability Statement",
draft-ietf-eman-applicability-statement-03.txt, work in
progress, April 2013.

Authors' Addresses

Benoit Claise
Cisco Systems, Inc.
De Kleetlaan 6a b1
Diegem 1813

Internet-Draft < Energy Object Context MIB >
BE

July 2013

Phone: +32 2 704 5622
Email: bclaise@cisco.com

John Parello
Cisco Systems, Inc.
3550 Cisco Way
San Jose, California 95134
US

Phone: +1 408 525 2339
Email: jparello@cisco.com

Mouli Chandramouli
Cisco Systems, Inc.
Sarjapur Outer Ring Road
Bangalore 560103
IN

Phone: +91 80 4429 2409
Email: moulchan@cisco.com

Network Working Group
Internet-Draft
Intended Status: Standards Track
Expires: February 15, 2014

M. Chandramouli
Cisco Systems, Inc.
B. Schoening
Independent Consultant
J. Quittek
T. Dietz
NEC Europe Ltd.
B. Claise
Cisco Systems, Inc.
July 15, 2013

Power and Energy Monitoring MIB
draft-ietf-eman-energy-monitoring-mib-06

Status of this Memo

This Internet-Draft is submitted to IETF in full conformance with the provisions of BCP 78 and BCP 79.

Internet-Drafts are working documents of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), its areas, and its working groups. Note that other groups may also distribute working documents as Internet-Drafts.

Internet-Drafts are draft documents valid for a maximum of six months and may be updated, replaced, or obsoleted by other documents at any time. It is inappropriate to use Internet-Drafts as reference material or to cite them other than as "work in progress."

The list of current Internet-Drafts can be accessed at <http://www.ietf.org/ietf/lid-abstracts.txt>

The list of Internet-Draft Shadow Directories can be accessed at <http://www.ietf.org/shadow.html>

This Internet-Draft will expire on January 2014.

<Claise, et. Al>

Expires January 15, 2014

[Page 1]

Copyright (c) 2011 IETF Trust and the persons identified as the document authors. All rights reserved.

This document is subject to BCP 78 and the IETF Trust's Legal Provisions Relating to IETF Documents (<http://trustee.ietf.org/license-info>) in effect on the date of publication of this document. Please review these documents carefully, as they describe your rights and restrictions with respect to this document. Code Components extracted from this document must include Simplified BSD License text as described in Section 4.e of the Trust Legal Provisions and are provided without warranty as described in the Simplified BSD License.

Abstract

This document defines a subset of the Management Information Base (MIB) for power and energy monitoring of devices.

Conventions used in this document

The key words "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHALL", "SHALL NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "NOT RECOMMENDED", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" in this document are to be interpreted as described in RFC 2119 [RFC2119].

Table of Contents

1. Introduction.....	3
2. The Internet-Standard Management Framework.....	4
3. Use Cases.....	4
4. Terminology.....	5
5. Architecture Concepts Applied to the MIB Module.....	6
5.1. Energy Object Information.....	13
5.2. Power State.....	14
5.2.1. Power State Set.....	14
5.3. Energy Object Usage Information.....	15
5.4. Optional Power Usage Attributes.....	16
5.5. Optional Energy Measurement.....	17
5.6. Fault Management.....	21
6. Discovery.....	21
7. Link with the other IETF MIBs.....	22

Internet-Draft	<Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>	July 2013
7.1.	Link with the ENTITY-MIB and the ENTITY-SENSOR MIB..	22
7.2.	Link with the ENTITY-STATE MIB.....	23
7.3.	Link with the POWER-OVER-ETHERNET MIB.....	24
7.4.	Link with the UPS MIB.....	24
7.5.	Link with the LLDP and LLDP-MED MIBs.....	25
8.	Implementation Scenario.....	26
9.	Structure of the MIB.....	28
10.	MIB Definitions.....	29
11.	Implementation Status.....	70
12.	Security Considerations.....	70
13.	IANA Considerations.....	71
13.1.	IANA Considerations for the MIB Modules.....	71
13.2.	IANA Registration of new Power State Set.....	72
13.2.1.	IANA Registration of the IEEE1621 Power State Set..	72
13.2.2.	IANA Registration of the DMTF Power State Set.....	72
13.2.3.	IANA Registration of the EMAN Power State Set.....	73
13.3.	Updating the Registration of Existing Power State Sets.....	73
12.	Contributors.....	73
13.	Acknowledgment.....	74
14.	Open Issues.....	74
15.	References.....	74
15.2.	Normative References.....	74
15.3.	Informative References.....	75

1. Introduction

This document defines a subset of the Management Information Base (MIB) for use in energy management of devices within or connected to communication networks. The MIB modules in this document are designed to provide a model for energy management, which includes monitoring for power state and energy consumption of networked elements. This MIB takes into account the Energy Management Framework [EMAN-FMWK], which in turn, is based on the Requirements for Energy Management [EMAN-REQ].

Energy management is applicable to devices in communication networks. Target devices for this specification include (but are not limited to): routers, switches, Power over Ethernet (PoE) endpoints, protocol gateways for building management systems, intelligent meters, home energy gateways, hosts and servers, sensor proxies, etc. Target devices and the use cases for Energy Management are discussed in Energy Management Applicability Statement [EMAN-AS].

Where applicable, device monitoring extends to the individual components of the device and to any attached dependent devices. For example: A device can contain components that are independent from a power-state point of view, such as line cards, processor cards, hard drives. A device can also have dependent attached devices, such as a switch with PoE endpoints or a power distribution unit with attached endpoints.

Devices and their sub-components can be modeled using the containment tree of the ENTITY-MIB [RFC6933]. In addition, ENERGY-AWARE-MIB module [EMAN-AWARE-MIB] provides a framework for modeling the relationship between Energy Objects. It is conceivable to have implementations of ENERGY-AWARE-MIB and ENERGY-OBJECT-MIB for modeling the relationships between Energy Objects and also monitoring the Energy consumption. In some situations, it is possible to have implementation of ENERGY-OBJECT-MIB along with the requirement of Module Compliance of ENTITY-MIB V4 [RFC6933] with respect to entity4CRCompliance should be supported which requires 3 MIB objects (entPhysicalIndex, entPhysicalName and entPhysicalUUID) MUST be implemented.

2. The Internet-Standard Management Framework

For a detailed overview of the documents that describe the current Internet-Standard Management Framework, please refer to section 7 of RFC 3410 [RFC3410].

Managed objects are accessed via a virtual information store, termed the Management Information Base or MIB. MIB objects are generally accessed through the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). Objects in the MIB are defined using the mechanisms defined in the Structure of Management Information (SMI). This memo specifies MIB modules that are compliant to SMIv2, which is described in STD 58, RFC 2578 [RFC2578], STD 58, RFC 2579 [RFC2579] and STD 58, RFC 2580 [RFC2580].

3. Use Cases

Requirements for power and energy monitoring for networking devices are specified in [EMAN-REQ]. The requirements in [EMAN-REQ] cover devices typically found in communications networks, such as switches, routers, and various connected endpoints. For a power monitoring architecture to be useful, it should also apply to facility meters, power distribution units, gateway proxies for commercial building control, home automation

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
devices, and devices that interface with the utility and/or
smart grid. Accordingly, the scope of the MIB modules in this
document is broader than that specified in [EMAN-REQ]. Several
use cases for Energy Management have been identified in the
"Energy Management (EMAN) Applicability Statement" [EMAN-AS]. An
illustrative example scenario is presented in Section 8.

4. Terminology

Please refer to [EMAN-FMWK] for the definitions of the
following terminology used in this draft.

Device

Component

Energy Management

Energy Management System (EnMS)

ISO Energy Management System

Energy

Power

Demand

Power Attributes

Electrical Equipment

Non-Electrical Equipment (Mechanical Equipment)

Energy Object

Electrical Energy Object

Non-Electrical Energy Object

Energy Monitoring

Energy Control

Provide Energy:

Receive Energy:

Power Interface

Power Inlet

Power Outlet

Energy Management Domain

Energy Object Identification

Energy Object Context

Energy Object Relationship

Aggregation Relationship

Metering Relationship

Power Source Relationship

Proxy Relationship

Energy Object Parent

Energy Object Child

Power State

Power State Set

Nameplate Power

5. Architecture Concepts Applied to the MIB Module

This section describes the concepts specified in the Energy Management Framework [EMAN-FMWK] that pertain to power usage, with specific information related to the MIB module specified in this document. This subsection maps to the section "Architecture High Level Concepts" in the Power Monitoring Architecture [EMAN-FMWK].

The Energy Monitoring MIB has 2 independent MIB modules. The first MIB module energyObjectMib is focused on measurement of power and energy. The second MIB module powerCharMIB is focused on Power Attributes measurements.

The energyObjectMib MIB module consists of five tables.

The first table is the eoMeterCapabilitiesTable. It indicates the instrumentation available for each energy object. Thus, the entries in this table indicate to the EnMS which other tables from the ENERGY-OBJECT-MIB and POWER-ATTRIBUTES-MIB are available for each energy object. The eoMeterCapabilitiesTable is indexed by entPhysicalIndex.

The second table is the eoPowerTable. It returns the power consumption of each energy object, as well as the units, sign, measurement accuracy, and related objects. The eoPowerTable is indexed by entPhysicalIndex.

The third table is the eoPowerStateTable. For each energy object, it provides information and statistics about the supported power states. The eoPowerStateTable is indexed by entPhysicalIndex and eoPowerStateIndex.

The fourth table is the eoEnergyParametersTable. The entries in this table configure the parameters of energy and demand measurement collection. This table is indexed by eoEnergyParametersIndex.

The fifth table is the eoEnergyTable. The entries in this table provide the log the energy and demand information. This table is indexed by eoEnergyParametersIndex.

```
eoMeterCapabilitiesTable(1)
|
+---eoMeterCapabilitiesEntry(1)[entPhysicalIndex]
|   |
|   +---r-n BITS          eoMeterCapability
|
eoPowerTable(2)
|
+---eoPowerEntry(1) [entPhysicalIndex]
|   |
|   +---r-n Integer32      eoPower(1)
|   +-- r-n Integer32      eoPowerNamePlate(2)
|   +-- r-n UnitMultiplier eoPowerUnitMultiplier(3)
|   +-- r-n Integer32      eoPowerAccuracy(4)
|   +-- r-n INTEGER        eoMeasurementCaliber(5)
|   +-- r-n INTEGER        eoPowerCurrentType(6)
```

```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>    July 2013
|
|   +-- r-n INTEGER          eoPowerOrigin(7)
|   +-- rwn IANAPowerStateSet eoPowerAdminState(8)
|   +-- r-n IANAPowerStateSet eoPowerOperState(9)
|   +-- r-n OwnerString      eoPowerStateEnterReason(10)
|
|   +---eoPowerStateTable(3)
|   |   +---eoPowerStateEntry(1)
|   |   |       [entPhysicalIndex, eoPowerStateIndex]
|   |   |
|   |   +--- --n IANAPowerStateSet    eoPowerStateIndex(1)
|   |   +-- r-n Integer32             eoPowerStateMaxPower (2)
|   |   +-- r-n UnitMultiplier
|   |   |               eoPowerStatePowerUnitMultiplier (3)
|   |   +-- r-n TimeTicks             eoPowerStateTotalTime(4)
|   |   +-- r-n Counter32             eoPowerStateEnterCount(5)
|
|   +eoEnergyParametersTable(4)
|   +---eoEnergyParametersEntry(1) [eoEnergyParametersIndex]
|   |
|   |   +--- --n PhysicalIndex          eoEnergyObjectIndex (1)
|   |   +   r-n Integer32              eoEnergyParametersIndex (2)
|   |   +-- r-n TimeInterval
|   |   |               eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength (3)
|   |   +-- r-n Integer32
|   |   |               eoEnergyParametersIntervalNumber (4)
|   |   +-- r-n Integer32
|   |   |               eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode (5)
|   |   +-- r-n TimeInterval
|   |   |               eoEnergyParametersIntervalWindow (6)
|   |   +-- r-n Integer32
|   |   |               eoEnergyParametersSampleRate (7)
|   |   +-- r-n RowStatus    eoEnergyParametersStatus (8)
|
|   +eoEnergyTable(5)
|   +---eoEnergyEntry(1) [ eoEnergyParametersIndex,
eoEnergyCollectionStartTime]
|   |
|   |   +-- r-n TimeTicks          eoEnergyCollectionStartTime (1)
|   |   +-- r-n Integer32          eoEnergyConsumed (2)
|   |   +-- r-n Integer32          eoEnergyProduced (3)
|   |   +-- r-n Integer32          eoEnergyNet (4)
|   |   +-- r-n UnitMultiplier
|   |   |               eoEnergyUnitMultiplier (5)
|   |   +-- r-n Integer32          eoEnergyAccuracy(6)
|   |   +-- r-n Integer32          eoEnergyMaxConsumed (7)

```

```

|   +-- r-n Integer32      eoEnergyMaxProduced (8)
|   +-- r-n TimeTicks
|                                   eoEnergyDiscontinuityTime(9)

```

The powerAttributesMIB consists of four tables.
 eoACPwrAttributesTable is indexed by entPhysicalIndex.
 eoACPwrAttributesPhaseTable is indexed by entPhysicalIndex and
 eoPhaseIndex. eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseTable and
 eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseTable are indexed by entPhysicalIndex
 and eoPhaseIndex.

eoACPwrAttributesTable(1)

```

| +---eoACPwrAttributesEntry(1) [ entPhysicalIndex]
| |
| | +---r-n INTEGER      eoACPwrAttributesConfiguration (1)
| | +-- r-n Integer32    eoACPwrAttributesAvgVoltage (2)
| | +-- r-n Integer32    eoACPwrAttributesAvgCurrent (3)
| | +-- r-n Integer32    eoACPwrAttributesFrequency (4)
| | +-- r-n UnitMultiplier
| | |                   eoACPwrAttributesPowerUnitMultiplier (5)
| | +-- r-n Integer32    eoACPwrAttributesPowerAccuracy (6)
| | +-- r-n Integer32
| | |                   eoACPwrAttributesTotalActivePower (7)
| | +-- r-n Integer32
| | |                   eoACPwrAttributesTotalReactivePower (8)
| | +-- r-n Integer32
| | |                   eoACPwrAttributesTotalApparentPower (9)
| | +-- r-n Integer32
| | |                   eoACPwrAttributesTotalPowerFactor (10)
| | +-- r-n Integer32    eoACPwrAttributesThdAmperes (11)
|

```

+eoACPwrAttributesPhaseTable(2)

```

| +---EoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry(1)[ entPhysicalIndex,
| |                                   eoPhaseIndex]
| |
| | +-- r-n Integer32    eoPhaseIndex (1)
| | +-- r-n Integer32
| | |                   eoACPwrAttributesPhaseAvgCurrent (2)
| | +-- r-n Integer32
| | |                   eoACPwrAttributesPhaseActivePower (3)
| | +-- r-n Integer32
| | |                   eoACPwrAttributesPhaseReactivePower (4)
| | +-- r-n Integer32
| | |                   eoACPwrAttributesPhaseApparentPower (5)
| | +-- r-n Integer32

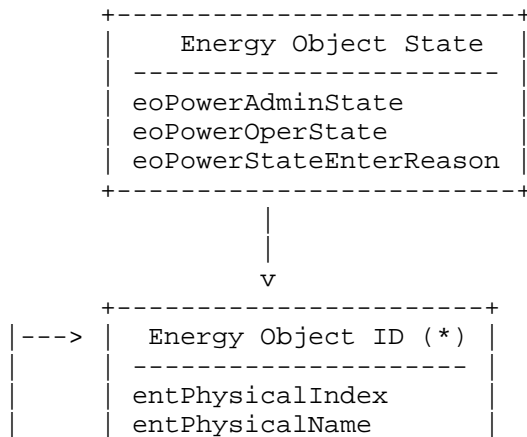
```

```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>   July 2013
|                |
|                |         eoACPwrAttributesPhasePowerFactor (6)
|                |         +--- r-n Integer32
|                |         |         eoACPwrAttributesPhaseImpedance (7)
|                |         |
|                |         +eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseTable(3)
|                |         +--- eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseEntry(1)
|                |         |         [entPhysicalIndex,
|                |         |         |         eoPhaseIndex]
|                |         |         +--- r-n Integer32
|                |         |         |         eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseToNextPhaseVoltage (1)
|                |         |         |         +--- r-n Integer32
|                |         |         |         |         eoACPwrAttributesDelThdPhaseToNextPhaseVoltage (2)
|                |         |         |         |         +--- r-n Integer32
|                |         |         |         |         |         eoACPwrAttributesDelThdCurrent (3)
|                |         |         |         |
|                |         |         +eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseTable(4)
|                |         |         +--- eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseEntry(1)
|                |         |         |         [entPhysicalIndex,
|                |         |         |         |         eoPhaseIndex]
|                |         |         |         +--- r-n Integer32
|                |         |         |         |         eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseToNeutralVoltage (1)
|                |         |         |         |         +--- r-n Integer32
|                |         |         |         |         |         eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseCurrent (2)
|                |         |         |         |         |         +--- r-n Integer32
|                |         |         |         |         |         |         eoACPwrAttributesWyeThdPhaseToNeutralVoltage (3)
|                |         |         |         |         |
|                |         |         |         |         |         .
|                |         |         |         |

```

A UML representation of the MIB objects in the two MIB modules are energyObjectMib and powerAttributesMIB are presented.



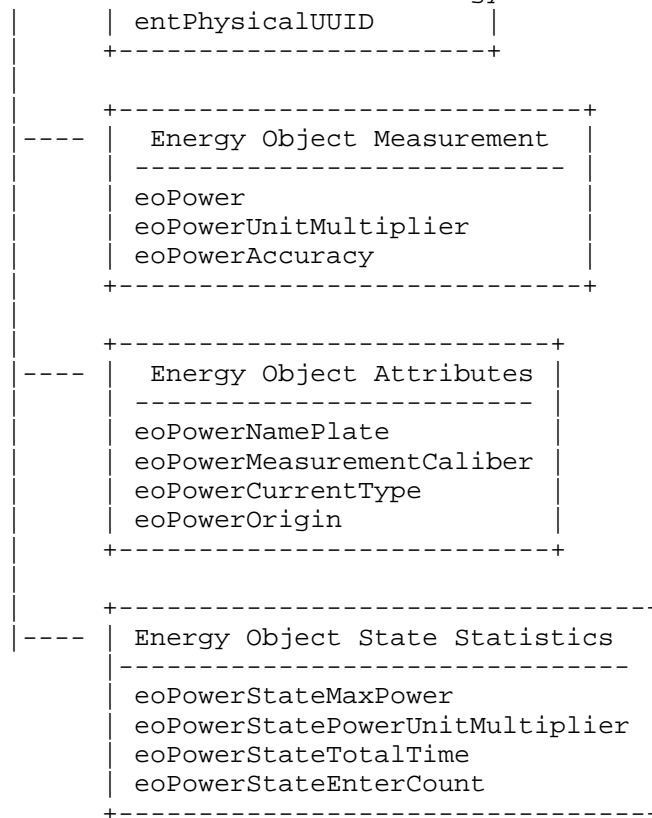
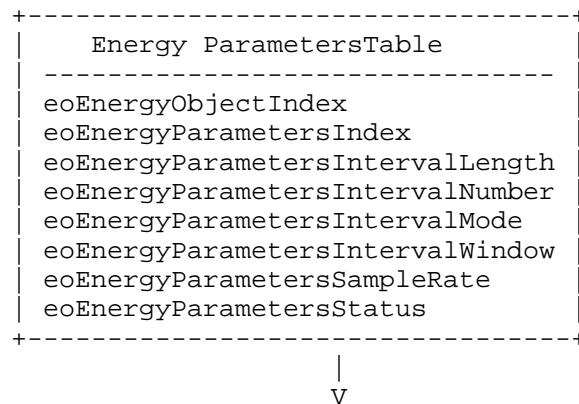


Figure 1:UML diagram for energyObjectMib

(*) Compliance with the ENERGY-AWARE-MIB



↓
V

Energy Table
eoEnergyCollectionStartTime
eoEnergyConsumed
eoEnergyProduced
eoEnergyNet
eoEnergyUnitMultiplier
eoEnergyAccuracy
eoEnergyMaxConsumed
eoEnergyMaxProduced
eoDiscontinuityTime

Energy Object ID (*)
entPhysicalIndex
entPhysicalName
entPhysicalUUID

Power Attributes
eoACPwrAttributesConfiguration
eoACPwrAttributesAvgVoltage
eoACPwrAttributesAvgCurrent
eoACPwrAttributesFrequency
eoACPwrAttributesPowerUnitMultiplier
eoACPwrAttributesPowerAccuracy
eoACPwrAttributesTotalActivePower
eoACPwrAttributesTotalReactivePower
eoACPwrAttributesTotalApparentPower
eoACPwrAttributesTotalPowerFactor
eoACPwrAttributesThdAmpheres

Power Phase Attributes
eoPhaseIndex
eoACPwrAttributesPhaseAvgCurrent

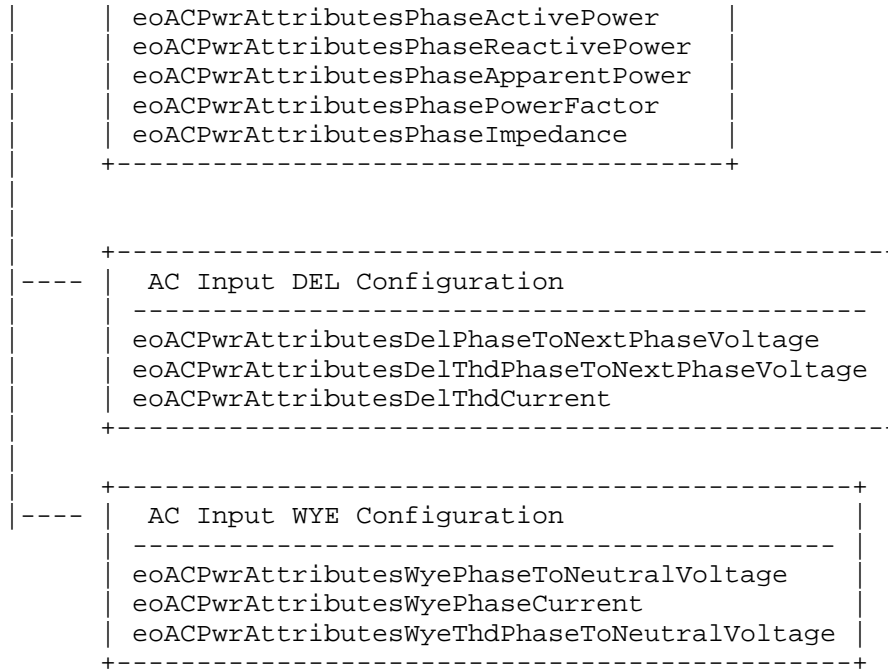


Figure 2: UML diagram for the powerAttributesMIB

(*) Compliance with the ENERGY-AWARE-MIB

5.1. Energy Object Information

Refer to the "Energy Object Information" section in [EMAN-FMWK] for background information. An energy aware device is considered as an instance of a Energy Object as defined in the [EMAN-FMWK].

The Energy Object identity information is specified in the MIB ENERGY-AWARE-MIB module [EMAN-AWARE-MIB] primary table, i.e. the `eoTable`. In this table, the context of the Energy Object such as Domain, RoleDescription, Importance are specified. In addition, the ENERGY-AWARE-MIB module returns the relationship between Objects. There are several possible relationships between Parent and Child as defined in [EMAN-AWARE-MIB] such as `MeteredBy`, `PoweredBy`, and `AggregatedBy`.

Refer to the "Power States" section in [EMAN-FMWK] for background information.

An Energy Object may have energy conservation modes called Power States. Between the ON and OFF states of a device, there can be several intermediate energy saving modes. Those energy saving modes are called as Power States.

Power States, which represent universal states of power management of an Energy Object, are specified by the eoPowerState MIB object. The actual Power State is specified by the eoPowerOperState MIB object, while the eoPowerAdminState MIB object specifies the Power State requested for the Energy Object. The difference between the values of eoPowerOperState and eoPowerAdminState can be attributed that the Energy Object is busy transitioning from eoPowerAdminState into the eoPowerOperState, at which point it will update the content of eoPowerOperState. In addition, the possible reason for change in Power State is reported in eoPowerStateEnterReason. Regarding eoPowerStateEnterReason, management stations and Energy Objects should support any format of the owner string dictated by the local policy of the organization. It is suggested that this name contain at least the reason for the transition change, and one or more of the following: IP address, management station name, network manager's name, location, or phone number.

The MIB objects eoPowerOperState, eoPowerAdminState, and eoPowerStateEnterReason are contained in the eoPowerTable MIB table.

The eoPowerStateTable table enumerates the maximum power usage in watts, for every single supported Power State of each Power State Set supported by the Energy Object. In addition, PowerStateTable provides additional statistics: eoPowerStateEnterCount, the number of times an entity has visited a particular Power State, and eoPowerStateTotalTime, the total time spent in a particular Power State of an Energy Object.

5.2.1. Power State Set

There are several standards and implementations of Power State Sets. A Energy Object can support one or multiple Power State Set implementation(s) concurrently.

There are currently three Power State Sets advocated:

```
unknown(0)
IEEE1621(256) - [IEEE1621]
DMTF(512)      - [DMTF]
EMAN(1024)     - [EMAN-MONITORING-MIB]
```

The respective specific states related to each Power State Set are specified in the following sections. The guidelines for addition of new Power State Sets have been specified in the IANA Considerations Section.

The Power States within each Power State Set are listed in [EMAN-FMWK]. The Textual Convention IANAPowerStateSet provides the proposed numbering of the Power States within the IEEE1621 Power State Set, DMTF Power State Set and the EMAN Power State Set.

5.3. Energy Object Usage Information

Refer to the "Energy Object Usage Measurement" section in [EMAN-FMWK] for background information.

For an Energy Object, power usage is reported using eoPower. The magnitude of measurement is based on the eoPowerUnitMultiplier MIB variable, based on the UnitMultiplier Textual Convention (TC). Power measurement magnitude should conform to the IEC 62053-21 [IEC.62053-21] and IEC 62053-22 [IEC.62053-22] definition of unit multiplier for the SI (System International) units of measure. Measured values are represented in SI units obtained by BaseValue * 10 raised to the power of the scale.

For example, if current power usage of an Energy Object is 3, it could be 3 W, 3 mW, 3 KW, or 3 MW, depending on the value of eoPowerUnitMultiplier. Note that other measurements throughout the two MIB modules in this document use the same mechanism, including eoPowerStatePowerUnitMultiplier, eoEnergyUnitMultiplier, and eoACPwrAttributesPowerUnitMultiplier.

In addition to knowing the usage and magnitude, it is useful to know how a eoPower measurement was obtained. An NMS can use this to account for the accuracy and nature of the reading between different implementations. For this eoPowerOrigin describes whether the measurements were made at the device itself or from a remote source. The eoPowerMeasurementCaliber

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
describes the method that was used to measure the power and can distinguish actual or estimated values. There may be devices in the network, which may not be able to measure or report power consumption. For those devices, the object eoPowerMeasurementCaliber shall report that measurement mechanism is "unavailable" and the eoPower measurement shall be "0".

The nameplate power rating of an Energy Object is specified in eoPowerNameplate MIB object.

5.4. Optional Power Usage Attributes

Refer to the "Optional Power Usage Attributes" section in [EMAN-FMWK] for background information.

The optional powerAttributesMIB MIB module can be implemented to further describe power usage attributes measurement. The powerAttributesMIB MIB module adheres closely to the IEC 61850 7-2 standard to describe AC measurements.

The powerAttributesMIB MIB module contains a primary table, the eoACPwrAttributesTable table, that defines power attributes measurements for supported entPhysicalIndex entities, as a sparse extension of the eoPowerTable (with entPhysicalIndex as primary index). This eoACPwrAttributesTable table contains such information as the configuration (single phase, DEL 3 phases, WYE 3 phases), voltage, frequency, power accuracy, total active/reactive power/apparent power, amperage, and voltage.

In case of 3-phase power, the eoACPwrAttributesPhaseTable additional table is populated with Power Attributes measurements per phase (so double indexed by the entPhysicalIndex and eoPhaseIndex). This table, which describes attributes common to both WYE and DEL configurations, contains the average current, active/reactive/apparent power, power factor, and impedance.

In case of 3-phase power with a DEL configuration, the eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseTable table describes the phase-to-phase power attributes measurements, i.e., voltage and current.

In case of 3-phase power with a Wye configuration, the eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseTable table describes the phase-to-neutral power attributes measurements, i.e., voltage and current.

Refer to the "Optional Energy and demand Measurement" section in [EMAN-FMWK] for the definition and terminology information.

It is relevant to measure energy and demand only when there are actual power measurements obtained from measurement hardware. If the eoPowerMeasurementCaliber MIB object has values of unavailable, unknown, estimated, or presumed, then the energy and demand values are not useful.

Two tables are introduced to characterize energy measurement of an Energy Object: eoEnergyTable and eoEnergyParametersTable. Both energy and demand information can be represented via the eoEnergyTable. Energy information will be an accumulation with no interval. Demand information can be represented. The eoEnergyParametersTable consists of the parameters defining eoEnergyParametersIndex an index of that specifies the setting for collection of energy measurements for an Energy Object, eoEnergyObjectIndex linked to the entPhysicalIndex of the Energy Object, the duration of measurement intervals in seconds, (eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength), the number of successive intervals to be stored in the eoEnergyTable, (eoEnergyParametersIntervalNumber), the type of measurement technique (eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode), and a sample rate used to calculate the average (eoEnergyParametersSampleRate). Judicious choice of the sampling rate will ensure accurate measurement of energy while not imposing an excessive polling burden.

There are three eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode types used for energy measurement collection: period, sliding, and total. The choices of the the three different modes of collection are based on IEC standard 61850-7-4. Note that multiple eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode types MAY be configured simultaneously. It is important to note that for a given Energy Object, multiple modes (periodic, total, sliding window) of energy measurement collection can be configured with the use of eoEnergyParametersIndex. However, simultaneous measurement in multiple modes for a given Energy Object depends on the Energy Object capability.

These three eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode types are illustrated by the following three figures, for which:

- The horizontal axis represents the current time, with the symbol <--- L ---> expressing the

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
 eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength, and the
 eoEnergyCollectionStartTime is represented by S1, S2, S3, S4,
 ..., Sx where x is the value of
 eoEnergyParametersIntervalNumber.

- The vertical axis represents the time interval of sampling and the value of eoEnergyConsumed can be obtained at the end of the sampling period. The symbol ===== denotes the duration of the sampling period.

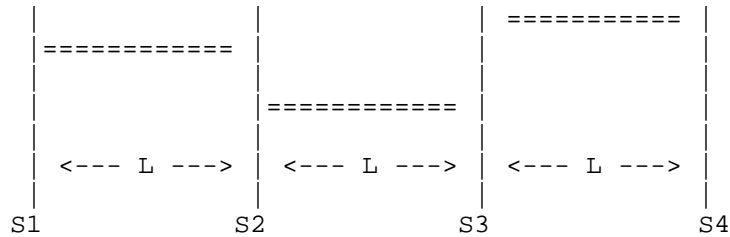
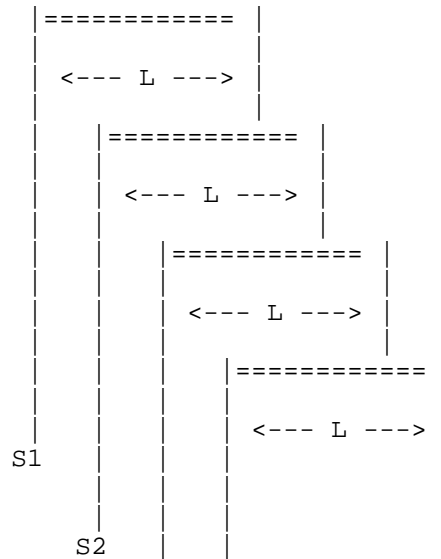


Figure 4 : Period eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode

A eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode type of 'period' specifies non-overlapping periodic measurements. Therefore, the next eoEnergyCollectionStartTime is equal to the previous eoEnergyCollectionStartTime plus eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength. $S2=S1+L$; $S3=S2+L$, ...



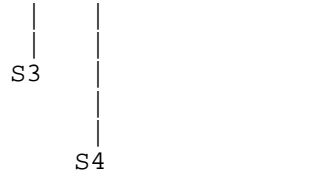


Figure 5 : Sliding eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode

A `eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode` type of 'sliding' specifies overlapping periodic measurements.

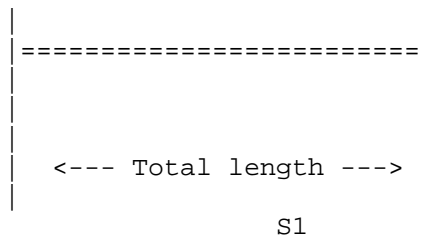


Figure 6 : Total eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode

A `eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode` type of 'total' specifies a continuous measurement since the last reset. The value of `eoEnergyParametersIntervalNumber` should be (1) one and `eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength` is ignored.

The `eoEnergyParametersStatus` is used to start and stop energy usage logging. The status of this variable is "active" when all the objects in `eoEnergyParametersTable` are appropriate which in turn indicates if `eoEnergyTable` entries exist or not.

The `eoEnergyTable` consists of energy measurements in `eoEnergyConsumed`, `eoEnergyProduced` and `eoEnergyNet`, the units of the measured energy `eoEnergyUnitMultiplier`, and the maximum observed energy within a window `eoEnergyMaxConsumed`, `eoEnergyMaxProduced`.

Measurements of the total energy consumed by an Energy Object may suffer from interruptions in the continuous measurement of energy consumption. In order to indicate such interruptions, the object `eoEnergyDiscontinuityTime` is provided for indicating the time of the last interruption of total energy measurement. `eoEnergyDiscontinuityTime` shall indicate the `sysUpTime` [RFC3418] when the device was reset.

The following example illustrates the eoEnergyTable and eoEnergyParametersTable:

First, in order to estimate energy, a time interval to sample energy should be specified, i.e. eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength can be set to "900 seconds" or 15 minutes and the number of consecutive intervals over which the maximum energy is calculated (eoEnergyParametersIntervalNumber) as "10". The sampling rate internal to the Energy Object for measurement of power usage (eoEnergyParametersSampleRate) can be "1000 milliseconds", as set by the Energy Object as a reasonable value. Then, the eoEnergyParametersStatus is set to active (value 1) to indicate that the Energy Object should start monitoring the usage per the eoEnergyTable.

The indices for the eoEnergyTable are eoEnergyParametersIndex which identifies the index for the setting of energy measurement collection Energy Object, and eoEnergyCollectionStartTime, which denotes the start time of the energy measurement interval based on sysUpTime [RFC3418]. The value of eoEnergyConsumed is the measured energy consumption over the time interval specified (eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength) based on the Energy Object internal sampling rate (eoEnergyParametersSampleRate). While choosing the values for the eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength and eoEnergyParametersSampleRate, it is recommended to take into consideration either the network element resources adequate to process and store the sample values, and the mechanism used to calculate the eoEnergyConsumed. The units are derived from eoEnergyUnitMultiplier. For example, eoEnergyConsumed can be "100" with eoEnergyUnitMultiplier equal to 0, the measured energy consumption of the Energy Object is 100 watt-hours. The eoEnergyMaxConsumed is the maximum energy observed and that can be "150 watt-hours".

The eoEnergyTable has a buffer to retain a certain number of intervals, as defined by eoEnergyParametersIntervalNumber. If the default value of "10" is kept, then the eoEnergyTable contains 10 energy measurements, including the maximum.

Here is a brief explanation of how the maximum energy can be calculated. The first observed energy measurement value is taken to be the initial maximum. With each subsequent measurement, based on numerical comparison, maximum energy may be updated. The maximum value is retained as long as the measurements are taking place. Based on periodic polling of

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
this table, an NMS could compute the maximum over a longer
period, i.e. a month, 3 months, or a year.

5.6. Fault Management

[EMAN-REQ] specifies requirements about Power States such as "the current power state", "the time of the last state change", "the total time spent in each state", "the number of transitions to each state" etc. Some of these requirements are fulfilled explicitly by MIB objects such as eoPowerOperState, eoPowerStateTotalTime and eoPowerStateEnterCount. Some of the other requirements are met via the SNMP NOTIFICATION mechanism. eoPowerStateChange SNMP notification which is generated when the value(s) of ,eoPowerStateIndex, eoPowerOperState, eoPowerAdminState have changed.

6. Discovery

It is foreseen that most Energy Objects will require the implementation of the ENERGY-AWARE MIB [EMAN-AWARE-MIB] as a prerequisite for this MIB module. In such a case, eoPowerTable of the EMAN-MON-MIB is a sparse extension of the eoTable of ENERGY-AWARE-MIB. Every Energy Object MUST implement entPhysicalIndex, entPhysicalUUID and entPhysicalName from the ENTITY-MIB [RFC6933]. As the primary index for the Energy Object, entPhysicalIndex is used.

The NMS must first poll the ENERGY-AWARE-MIB module [EMAN-AWARE-MIB], if available, in order to discover all the Energy Objects and the relationships between those (notion of Parent/Child). In the ENERGY-AWARE-MIB module tables, the Energy Objects are indexed by the entPhysicalIndex.

If an implementation of the ENERGY-AWARE-MIB module is available in the local SNMP context, for the same Energy Object, the entPhysicalIndex value (EMAN-AWARE-MIB) shall be used. The entPhysicalIndex characterizes the Energy Object in the energyObjectMib and the powerAttributesMIB MIB modules (this document).

From there, the NMS must poll the eoPowerStateTable (specified in the energyObjectMib module in this document), which enumerates, amongst other things, the maximum power usage. As the entries in eoPowerStateTable table are indexed by the Energy Object (entPhysicalIndex), by the Power State Set (eoPowerStateIndex), the maximum power usage is discovered per

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
Energy Object, and the power usage per Power State of the Power State Set. In other words, polling the eoPowerStateTable allows the discovery of each Power State within every Power State Set supported by the Energy Object.

If the Energy Object is an Aggregator or a Proxy, the MIB module would be populated with the Energy Object Parent and Children information, which have their own Energy Object index value (entPhysicalIndex). However, the parent/child relationship must be discovered thanks to the ENERGY-AWARE-MIB module.

Finally, the NMS can monitor the power attributes thanks to the powerAttributesMIB MIB module, which reuses the entPhysicalIndex to index the Energy Object.

7. Link with the other IETF MIBs

7.1. Link with the ENTITY-MIB and the ENTITY-SENSOR MIB

RFC 4133 [RFC4133] defines the ENTITY-MIB module that lists the physical entities of a networking device (router, switch, etc.) and those physical entities indexed by entPhysicalIndex. From an energy-management standpoint, the physical entities that consume or produce energy are of interest.

RFC 3433 [RFC3433] defines the ENTITY-SENSOR MIB module that provides a standardized way of obtaining information (current value of the sensor, operational status of the sensor, and the data units precision) from sensors embedded in networking devices. Sensors are associated with each index of entPhysicalIndex of the ENTITY-MIB [RFC4133]. While the focus of the Power and Energy Monitoring MIB is on measurement of power usage of networking equipment indexed by the ENTITY-MIB, this MIB proposes a customized power scale for power measurement and different power state states of networking equipment, and functionality to configure the power state states.

When this MIB module is used to monitor the power usage of devices like routers and switches, the ENTITY-MIB and ENTITY-SENSOR MIB SHOULD be implemented. In such cases, the Energy Objects are modeled by the entPhysicalIndex through the entPhysicalEntity MIB object specified in the eoTable in the ENERGY-AWARE-MIB MIB module [EMAN-AWARE-MIB].

However, the ENTITY-SENSOR MIB [RFC3433] does not have the ANSI C12.x accuracy classes required for electricity (i.e., 1%, 2%,

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
0.5% accuracy classes). Indeed, entPhySensorPrecision [RFC3433] represents "The number of decimal places of precision in fixed-point sensor values returned by the associated entPhySensorValue object". The ANSI and IEC Standards are used for power measurement and these standards require that we use an accuracy class, not the scientific-number precision model specified in RFC3433. The eoPowerAccuracy MIB object models this accuracy. Note that eoPowerUnitMultiplier represents the scale factor per IEC 62053-21 [IEC.62053-21] and IEC 62053-22 [IEC.62053-22], which is a more logical representation for power measurements (compared to entPhySensorScale), with the mantissa and the exponent values $X * 10^Y$.

Power measurements specifying the qualifier 'UNITS' for each measured value in watts are used in the LLDP-EXT-MED-MIB, POE [RFC3621], and UPS [RFC1628] MIBs. The same 'UNITS' qualifier is used for the power measurement values.

One cannot assume that the ENTITY-MIB and ENTITY-SENSOR MIB are implemented for all Energy Objects that need to be monitored. A typical example is a converged building gateway, monitoring several other devices in the building, doing the proxy between SNMP and a protocol like BACNET. Another example is the home energy controller. In such cases, the eoPhysicalEntity value contains the zero value, thanks to PhysicalIndexOrZero textual convention.

The eoPower is similar to entPhySensorValue [RFC3433] and the eoPowerUnitMultiplier is similar to entPhySensorScale.

7.2. Link with the ENTITY-STATE MIB

For each entity in the ENTITY-MIB [RFC4133], the ENTITY-STATE MIB [RFC4268] specifies the operational states (entStateOper: unknown, enabled, disabled, testing), the alarm (entStateAlarm: unknown, underRepair, critical, major, minor, warning, indeterminate) and the possible values of standby states (entStateStandby: unknown, hotStandby, coldStandby, providingService).

From a power monitoring point of view, in contrast to the entity operational states of entities, Power States are required, as proposed in the Power and Energy Monitoring MIB module. Those Power States can be mapped to the different operational states in the ENTITY-STATE MIB, if a formal mapping is required. For example, the entStateStandby "unknown", "hotStandby", "coldStandby", states could map to the Power State "unknown",

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
"ready", "standby", respectively, while the entStateStandby
"providingService" could map to any "low" to "high" Power State.

7.3. Link with the POWER-OVER-ETHERNET MIB

Power-over-Ethernet MIB [RFC3621] provides an energy monitoring and configuration framework for power over Ethernet devices. The RFC introduces a concept of a port group on a switch to define power monitoring and management policy and does not use the entPhysicalIndex as the index. Indeed, the pethMainPseConsumptionPower is indexed by the pethMainPseGroupIndex, which has no mapping with the entPhysicalIndex.

One cannot assume that the Power-over-Ethernet MIB is implemented for all Energy Objects that need to be monitored. A typical example is a converged building gateway, monitoring several other devices in the building, doing the proxy between SNMP and a protocol like BACNET. Another example is the home energy controller. In such cases, the eoethPortIndex and eoethPortGrpIndex values contain the zero value, thanks to new PethPsePortIndexOrZero and textual PethPsePortGroupIndexOrZero conventions.

However, if the Power-over-Ethernet MIB [RFC3621] is supported, the Energy Object eoethPortIndex and eoethPortGrpIndex contain the pethPsePortIndex and pethPsePortGroupIndex, respectively.

As a consequence, the entPhysicalIndex MIB object has been kept as the unique Energy Object index.

Note that, even though the Power-over-Ethernet MIB [RFC3621] was created after the ENTITY-SENSOR MIB [RFC3433], it does not reuse the precision notion from the ENTITY-SENSOR MIB, i.e. the entPhySensorPrecision MIB object.

7.4. Link with the UPS MIB

To protect against unexpected power disruption, data centers and buildings make use of Uninterruptible Power Supplies (UPS). To protect critical assets, a UPS can be restricted to a particular subset or domain of the network. UPS usage typically lasts only for a finite period of time, until normal power supply is restored. Planning is required to decide on the capacity of the UPS based on output power and duration of probable power outage. To properly provision UPS power in a data center or building, it

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
is important to first understand the total demand required to support all the entities in the site. This demand can be assessed and monitored via the Power and Energy Monitoring MIB.

UPS MIB [RFC1628] provides information on the state of the UPS network. Implementation of the UPS MIB is useful at the aggregate level of a data center or a building. The MIB module contains several groups of variables:

- upsIdent: Identifies the UPS entity (name, model, etc.).
- upsBattery group: Indicates the battery state (upsbatteryStatus, upsEstimatedMinutesRemaining, etc.)
- upsInput group: Characterizes the input load to the UPS (number of input lines, voltage, current, etc.).
- upsOutput: Characterizes the output from the UPS (number of output lines, voltage, current, etc.)
- upsAlarms: Indicates the various alarm events.

The measurement of power in the UPS MIB is in Volts, Amperes and Watts. The units of power measurement are RMS volts and RMS Amperes. They are not based on the EntitySensorDataScale and EntitySensorDataPrecision of ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB.

Both the Power and Energy Monitoring MIB and the UPS MIB may be implemented on the same UPS SNMP agent, without conflict. In this case, the UPS device itself is the Energy Object Parent and any of the UPS meters or submeters are the Energy Object Children.

7.5. Link with the LLDP and LLDP-MED MIBs

The LLDP Protocol is a Data Link Layer protocol used by network devices to advertise their identities, capabilities, and interconnections on a LAN network.

The Media Endpoint Discovery is an enhancement of LLDP, known as LLDP-MED. The LLDP-MED enhancements specifically address voice applications. LLDP-MED covers 6 basic areas: capability discovery, LAN speed and duplex discovery, network policy discovery, location identification discovery, inventory discovery, and power discovery.

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013

Of particular interest to the current MIB module is the power discovery, which allows the endpoint device (such as a PoE phone) to convey power requirements to the switch. In power discovery, LLDP-MED has four Type Length Values (TLVs): power type, power source, power priority and power value. Respectively, those TLVs provide information related to the type of power (power sourcing entity versus powered device), how the device is powered (from the line, from a backup source, from external power source, etc.), the power priority (how important is it that this device has power?), and how much power the device needs.

The power priority specified in the LLDP-MED MIB [LLDP-MED-MIB] actually comes from the Power-over-Ethernet MIB [RFC3621]. If the Power-over-Ethernet MIB [RFC3621] is supported, the exact value from the pethPsePortPowerPriority [RFC3621] is copied over in the lldpXMedRemXPoEPDPPowerPriority [LLDP-MED-MIB]; otherwise the value in lldpXMedRemXPoEPDPPowerPriority is "unknown". From the Power and Energy Monitoring MIB, it is possible to identify the pethPsePortPowerPriority [RFC3621], thanks to the eoethPortIndex and eoethPortGrpIndex.

The lldpXMedLocXPoEPDPPowerSource [LLDP-MED-MIB] is similar to eoPowerOrigin in indicating if the power for an attached device is local or from a remote device. If the LLDP-MED MIB is supported, the following mapping can be applied to the eoPowerOrigin: lldpXMedLocXPoEPDPPowerSource fromPSE(2) and local(3) can be mapped to remote(2) and self(1), respectively.

8. Implementation Scenario

This section provides an illustrative example scenario for the implementation of the Energy Object, including Energy Object Parent and Energy Object Child relationships.

Example Scenario of a campus network: Switch with PoE Endpoints with further connected devices.

The campus network consists of switches that provide LAN connectivity. The switch with PoE ports is located in wiring closet. PoE IP phones are connected to the switch. The IP phones draw power from the PoE ports of the switch. In addition, a PC is daisy-chained from the IP phone for LAN connectivity.

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
The IP phone consumes power from the PoE switch, while the PC consumes power from the wall outlet.

The switch has implementations of ENTITY-MIB [RFC6933] and ENERGY-AWARE MIB [EMAN-AWARE-MIB] while the PC does not have implementation of the ENTITY-MIB, but has an implementation of ENERGY-AWARE MIB [EMAN-AWARE-MIB]. The switch has the following attributes, entPhysicalIndex "1", and entPhysicalUUID "UUID 1000". The power usage of the switch is "440 Watts". The switch does not have an Energy Object Parent.

The PoE switch port has the following attributes: The switch port has entPhysicalIndex "3", and entPhysicalUUID is "UUID 1000:3". The power metered at the POE switch port is "12 watts". In this example, the POE switch port has the switch as the Energy Object Parent, with its eoParentID of "1000".

The attributes of the PC are given below. The PC does not have an entPhysicalIndex, and the entPhysicalUUID is "UUID 1000:57 ". The PC has an Energy Object Parent, i.e. the switch port whose entPhysicalUUID is "UUID 1000:3". The power usage of the PC is "120 Watts" and is communicated to the switch port.

This example illustrates the important distinction between the Energy Object Children: The IP phone draws power from the switch, while the PC has LAN connectivity from the phone, but is powered from the wall outlet. However, the Energy Object Parent sends power control messages to both the Energy Object Children (IP phone and PC) and the Children react to those messages.

Switch			
Switch entPhyIndx	Switch UUID	Switch eoParentId	Switch eoPower
1	UUID 1000	null	440
SWITCH PORT			
Switch Port entPhyIndx	Switch Port UUID	Switch Port eoParentId	Switch Port eoPower

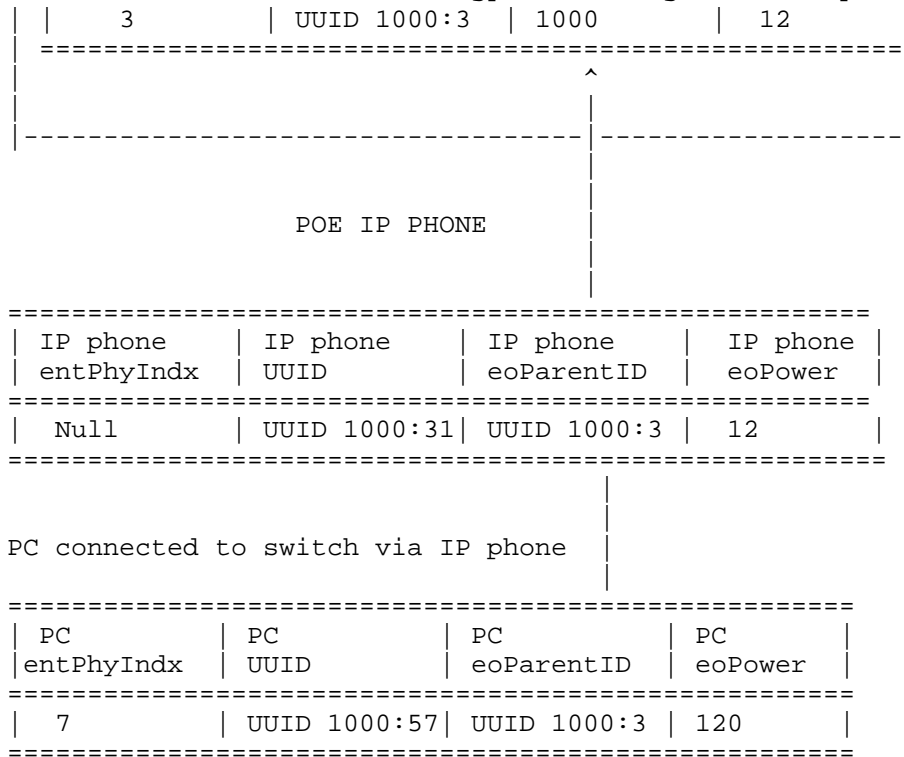


Figure 1: Example scenario

9. Structure of the MIB

The primary MIB object in this MIB module is the energyObjectMibObject. The eoPowerTable table of energyObjectMibObject describes the power measurement attributes of an Energy Object entity. The notion of identity of the device in terms of uniquely identification of the Energy Object and its relationship to other entities in the network are addressed in [EMAN-AWARE-MIB].

Logically, this MIB module is a sparse extension of the [EMAN-AWARE-MIB] module. Thus the following requirements which are applied to [EMAN-AWARE-MIB] are also applicable. As a requirement for this MIB module, [EMAN-AWARE-MIB] should be implemented and as Module Compliance of ENTITY-MIB V4 [RFC6933] with respect to entity4CRCompliance should be supported which

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
requires 3 MIB objects (entPhysicalIndex, entPhysicalName and
entPhysicalUUID) MUST be implemented.

eoMeterCapabilitiesTable is useful to enable applications to
determine the capabilities supported by the local management
agent. This table indicates the energy monitoring MIB groups
that are supported by the local management system. By reading
the value of this object, it is possible for applications to
know which tables contain the information and are usable without
walking through the table and querying every element which
involves a trial-and-error process.

The power measurement of an Energy Object contains information
describing its power usage (eoPower) and its current power state
(eoPowerOperState). In addition to power usage, additional
information describing the units of measurement
(eoPowerAccuracy, eoPowerUnitMultiplier), how power usage
measurement was obtained (eoPowerMeasurementCaliber), the
source of power (eoPowerOrigin) and the type of power
(eoPowerCurrentTtype) are described.

An Energy Object may contain an optional eoPowerAttributes table
that describes the electrical characteristics associated with
the current power state and usage.

An Energy Object may contain an optional eoEnergyTable to
describe energy measurement information over time.

An Energy Object may also contain optional battery information
associated with this entity.

10. MIB Definitions

```
-- *****  
--  
--  
-- This MIB is used to monitor power usage of network  
-- devices  
--  
-- *****
```

```
ENERGY-OBJECT-MIB DEFINITIONS ::= BEGIN
```

```
IMPORTS
    MODULE-IDENTITY,
    OBJECT-TYPE,
    NOTIFICATION-TYPE,
    mib-2,
    Integer32, Counter32, TimeTicks
        FROM SNMPv2-SMI
    TEXTUAL-CONVENTION, DisplayString, RowStatus, TimeInterval,
    TimeStamp, TruthValue
        FROM SNMPv2-TC
    MODULE-COMPLIANCE, NOTIFICATION-GROUP, OBJECT-GROUP
        FROM SNMPv2-CONF
    OwnerString
        FROM RMON-MIB
    entPhysicalIndex, PhysicalIndex
        FROM ENTITY-MIB;
```

```
energyObjectMib MODULE-IDENTITY
    LAST-UPDATED      "201306300000Z"      -- 30 June 2013
```

```
    ORGANIZATION      "IETF EMAN Working Group"
    CONTACT-INFO
        "WG charter:
        http://datatracker.ietf.org/wg/eman/charter/
```

```
    Mailing Lists:
        General Discussion: eman@ietf.org
```

```
        To Subscribe:
        https://www.ietf.org/mailman/listinfo/eman
```

```
        Archive:
        http://www.ietf.org/mail-archive/web/eman
```

```
    Editors:
        Mouli Chandramouli
        Cisco Systems, Inc.
        Sarjapur Outer Ring Road
        Bangalore 560103
        IN
        Phone: +91 80 4429 2409
        Email: moulchan@cisco.com
```

```
        Brad Schoening
        44 Rivers Edge Drive
        Little Silver, NJ 07739
```

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
US
Email: brad.schoening@verizon.net

Juergen Quittek
NEC Europe Ltd.
NEC Laboratories Europe
Network Research Division
Kurfuersten-Anlage 36
Heidelberg 69115
DE
Phone: +49 6221 4342-115
Email: quittek@neclab.eu

Thomas Dietz
NEC Europe Ltd.
NEC Laboratories Europe
Network Research Division
Kurfuersten-Anlage 36
69115 Heidelberg
DE
Phone: +49 6221 4342-128
Email: Thomas.Dietz@nw.neclab.eu

Benoit Claise
Cisco Systems, Inc.
De Kleetlaan 6a b1
Degem 1831
Belgium
Phone: +32 2 704 5622
Email: bclaise@cisco.com"

DESCRIPTION

"This MIB is used to monitor power and energy in devices.

This table sparse extension of the eoTable from the ENERGY-AWARE-MIB. As a requirement [EMAN-AWARE-MIB] should be implemented.

Module Compliance of ENTITY-MIB v4 with respect to entity4CRCompliance should be supported which requires implementation of 3 MIB objects (entPhysicalIndex, entPhysicalName and entPhysicalUUID)."

REVISION

"201306300000Z" -- 30 June 2013

DESCRIPTION

"Initial version, published as RFC XXXX."

::= { mib-2 xxx }

energyObjectMibNotifs OBJECT IDENTIFIER

::= { energyObjectMib 0 }

energyObjectMibObjects OBJECT IDENTIFIER

::= { energyObjectMib 1 }

energyObjectMibConform OBJECT IDENTIFIER

::= { energyObjectMib 2 }

-- Textual Conventions

IANAPowerStateSet ::= TEXTUAL-CONVENTION

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"IANAPowerState is a textual convention that describes Power State Sets and Power State Set Values an Energy Object supports. IANA has created a registry of Power State supported by an Energy Object and IANA shall administer the list of Power State Sets and Power States.

The textual convention assumes that power states in a power state set are limited to 255 distinct values. For a Power State Set S, the named number with the value S * 256 is allocated to indicate the power state set. For a Power State X in the Power State S, the named number with the value S * 256 + X + 1 is allocated to represent the power state."

REFERENCE

"<http://www.iana.org/assignments/eman>

RFC EDITOR NOTE: please change the previous URL if this is not the correct one after IANA assigned it."

SYNTAX

INTEGER {
 other(0), -- indicates other set
 unknown(255), -- unknown power state

```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>   July 2013
                  ieee1621(256), -- indicates IEEE1621 set
                  ieee1621On(257),
                  ieee1621Off(258),
                  ieee1621Sleep(259),

                  dmtf(512),    -- indicates DMTF set
                  dmtfOn(513),
                  dmtfSleepLight(514),
                  dmtfSleepDeep(515),
                  dmtfOffHard(516),
                  dmtfOffSoft(517),
                  dmtfHibernate(518),
                  dmtfPowerOffSoft(519),
                  dmtfPowerOffHard(520),
                  dmtfMasterBusReset(521),
                  dmtfDiagnosticInterrupt(522),
                  dmtfOffSoftGraceful(523),
                  dmtfOffHardGraceful(524),
                  dmtfMasterBusResetGraceful(525),
                  dmtfPowerCycleOffSoftGraceful(526),
                  dmtfPowerCycleHardGraceful(527),

                  eman(1024),    -- indicates EMAN set
                  emanmechoff(1025),
                  emansoftoff(1026),
                  emanhibernate(1027),
                  emansleep(1028),
                  emanstandby(1029),
                  emanready(1030),
                  emanlowMinus(1031),
                  emanlow(1032),
                  emanmediumMinus(1033),
                  emanmedium(1034),
                  emanhighMinus(1035),
                  emanhigh(1036)
                }

```

UnitMultiplier ::= TEXTUAL-CONVENTION

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"The Unit Multiplier is an integer value that represents the IEEE 61850 Annex A units multiplier associated with the integer units used to measure the power or energy.

For example, when used with eoPowerUnitMultiplier, -3 represents 10⁻³ or milliwatts."

REFERENCE

"The International System of Units (SI),

```
SYNTAX INTEGER {  
    yocto(-24),    -- 10^-24  
    zepto(-21),    -- 10^-21  
    atto(-18),     -- 10^-18  
    femto(-15),    -- 10^-15  
    pico(-12),     -- 10^-12  
    nano(-9),      -- 10^-9  
    micro(-6),     -- 10^-6  
    milli(-3),     -- 10^-3  
    units(0),      -- 10^0  
    kilo(3),       -- 10^3  
    mega(6),       -- 10^6  
    giga(9),       -- 10^9  
    tera(12),      -- 10^12  
    peta(15),      -- 10^15  
    exa(18),       -- 10^18  
    zetta(21),     -- 10^21  
    yotta(24)     -- 10^24  
}
```

-- Objects

eoMeterCapabilitiesTable OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF EoMeterCapabilitiesEntry

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This table is useful for helping applications determine the monitoring capabilities supported by the local management agents. It is possible for applications to know which tables are usable without going through a trial-and-error process."

::= { energyObjectMibObjects 1 }

eoMeterCapabilitiesEntry OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX EoMeterCapabilitiesEntry

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"An entry describes the metering capability of an Energy Object."

INDEX { entPhysicalIndex }

::= { eoMeterCapabilitiesTable 1 }

```
EoMeterCapabilitiesEntry ::= SEQUENCE {  
    eoMeterCapability          BITS  
}
```

eoMeterCapability OBJECT-TYPE

```
SYNTAX      BITS {  
    none(0),  
    powermetering(1),      -- power measurement  
    energymetering(2),     -- energy measurement  
    powerattributes(3)    -- power attributes  
}
```

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"An indication of the Energy monitoring capabilities supported by this agent. This object use a BITS syntax and indicate the MIB groups supported by the probe. By reading the value of this object, it is possible to determine the MIB tables supported. "

```
::= { eoMeterCapabilitiesEntry 1 }
```

eoPowerTable OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF EoPowerEntry

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This table lists Energy Objects."

```
::= { energyObjectMibObjects 2 }
```

eoPowerEntry OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX EoPowerEntry

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"An entry describes the power usage of an Energy Object."

INDEX { entPhysicalIndex }

```
::= { eoPowerTable 1 }
```

EoPowerEntry ::= SEQUENCE {

eoPower Integer32,

eoPowerNameplate Integer32,

eoPowerUnitMultiplier UnitMultiplier,

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013

```
    eoPowerAccuracy          Integer32,
    eoPowerMeasurementCaliber INTEGER,
    eoPowerCurrentType       INTEGER,
    eoPowerOrigin            INTEGER,
    eoPowerAdminState        IANAPowerStateSet,
    eoPowerOperState         IANAPowerStateSet,
    eoPowerStateEnterReason  OwnerString
}
```

eoPower OBJECT-TYPE

```
SYNTAX      Integer32
UNITS       "Watts"
MAX-ACCESS  read-only
STATUS      current
DESCRIPTION
```

"This object indicates the power measured for the Energy Object. For alternating current, this value is obtained as an average over fixed number of AC cycles. . This value is specified in SI units of watts with the magnitude of watts (milliwatts, kilowatts, etc.) indicated separately in eoPowerUnitMultiplier. The accuracy of the measurement is specified in eoPowerAccuracy. The direction of power flow is indicated by the sign on eoPower. If the Energy Object is consuming power, the eoPower value will be positive. If the Energy Object is producing power, the eoPower value will be negative.

The eoPower MUST be less than or equal to the maximum power that can be consumed at the power state specified by eoPowerState.

The eoPowerMeasurementCaliber object specifies how the usage value reported by eoPower was obtained. The eoPower value must report 0 if the eoPowerMeasurementCaliber is 'unavailable'. For devices that can not measure or report power, this option can be used."

```
::= { eoPowerEntry 1 }
```

eoPowerNameplate OBJECT-TYPE

```
SYNTAX      Integer32
UNITS       "Watts"
MAX-ACCESS  read-only
STATUS      current
DESCRIPTION
```

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013

"This object indicates the rated maximum consumption for the fully populated Energy Object. The nameplate power requirements are the maximum power numbers and, in almost all cases, are well above the expected operational consumption. The eoPowerNameplate is widely used for power provisioning. This value is specified in either units of watts or voltage and current. The units are therefore SI watts or equivalent Volt-Amperes with the magnitude (milliwatts, kilowatts, etc.) indicated separately in eoPowerUnitMultiplier."

```
::= { eoPowerEntry 2 }
```

eoPowerUnitMultiplier OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX UnitMultiplier

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"The magnitude of watts for the usage value in eoPower and eoPowerNameplate."

```
::= { eoPowerEntry 3 }
```

eoPowerAccuracy OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32 (0..10000)

UNITS "hundredths of percent"

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates a percentage value, in 100ths of a percent, representing the assumed accuracy of the usage reported by eoPower. For example: The value 1010 means the reported usage is accurate to +/- 10.1 percent. This value is zero if the accuracy is unknown or not applicable based upon the measurement method."

ANSI and IEC define the following accuracy classes for power measurement:

IEC 62053-22 60044-1 class 0.1, 0.2, 0.5, 1 3.

ANSI C12.20 class 0.2, 0.5"

```
::= { eoPowerEntry 4 }
```

eoPowerMeasurementCaliber OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX INTEGER {

unavailable(1) ,

unknown(2),

actual(3) ,

estimated(4),

presumed(5)

}

MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"This object specifies how the usage value reported by eoPower was obtained:

- unavailable(1): Indicates that the usage is not available. In such a case, the eoPower value must be 0 for devices that can not measure or report power this option can be used.

- unknown(2): Indicates that the way the usage was determined is unknown. In some cases, entities report aggregate power on behalf of another device. In such cases it is not known whether the usage reported is actual(2), estimated(3) or presumed (4).

- actual(3): Indicates that the reported usage was measured by the entity through some hardware or direct physical means. The usage data reported is not presumed (4) or estimated (3) but is the measured consumption rate.

- estimated(4): Indicates that the usage was not determined by physical measurement. The value is a derivation based upon the device type, state, and/or current utilization using some algorithm or heuristic. It is presumed that the entity's state and current configuration were used to compute the value.

- presumed(5): Indicates that the usage was not determined by physical measurement, algorithm or derivation. The usage was reported based upon external tables, specifications, and/or model information. For example, a PC Model X draws 200W, while a PC Model Y draws 210W"

::= { eoPowerEntry 5 }

eoPowerCurrentType OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX INTEGER {
ac(1),
dc(2),
unknown(3)
}
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013

"This object indicates whether the eoPower for the Energy Object reports alternating current AC(1), direct current DC(2), or that the current type is unknown(3)."

```
 ::= { eoPowerEntry 6 }
```

eoPowerOrigin OBJECT-TYPE

```
SYNTAX            INTEGER {
                        self (1),
                        remote (2)
                    }
```

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates the source of power measurement and can be useful when modeling the power usage of attached devices. The power measurement can be performed by the entity itself or the power measurement of the entity can be reported by another trusted entity using a protocol extension. A value of self(1) indicates the measurement is performed by the entity, whereas remote(2) indicates that the measurement was performed by another entity."

```
 ::= { eoPowerEntry 7 }
```

eoPowerAdminState OBJECT-TYPE

```
SYNTAX            IANAPowerStateSet
```

MAX-ACCESS read-write

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object specifies the desired Power State and the Power State Set for the Energy Object. Note that other(0) is not a Power State Set and unknown(255) is not a Power State as such, but simply an indication that the Power State of the Energy Object is unknown. Possible values of eoPowerAdminState within the Power State Set are registered at IANA. A current list of assignments can be found at <<http://www.iana.org/assignments/eman>> RFC-EDITOR: please check the location after IANA"

```
 ::= { eoPowerEntry 8 }
```

eoPowerOperState OBJECT-TYPE

```
SYNTAX            IANAPowerStateSet
```

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
"This object specifies the current operational Power State and the Power State Set for the Energy Object. other(0) is not a Power State Set and unknown(255) is not a Power State as such, but simply an indication that the Power State of the Energy Object is unknown.

Possible values of eoPowerAdminState within the Power State Set are registered at IANA.
A current list of assignments can be found at
<<http://www.iana.org/assignments/eman>>
RFC-EDITOR: please check the location after IANA"

::= { eoPowerEntry 9 }

eoPowerStateEnterReason OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX OwnerString

MAX-ACCESS read-write

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This string object describes the reason for the eoPowerAdminState transition Alternatively, this string may contain with the entity that configured this Energy Object to this Power State."

DEFVAL { "" }

::= { eoPowerEntry 10 }

eoPowerStateTable OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF EoPowerStateEntry

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This table enumerates the maximum power usage, in watts, for every single supported Power State of each Energy Object.

This table has an expansion-dependent relationship on the eoPowerTable, containing rows describing each Power State for the corresponding Energy Object. For every Energy Object in the eoPowerTable, there is a corresponding entry in this table."

::= { energyObjectMibObjects 3 }

eoPowerStateEntry OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX EoPowerStateEntry

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"A eoPowerStateEntry extends a corresponding eoPowerEntry. This entry displays max usage values at every single possible Power State supported by the Energy Object.

For example, given the values of a Energy Object corresponding to a maximum usage of 0 W at the state 1 (mechoff), 8 W at state 6 (ready), 11 W at state 9 (mediumMinus), and 11 W at state 12 (high):

State	MaxUsage	Units
1 (mechoff)	0	W
2 (softoff)	0	W
3 (hibernate)	0	W
4 (sleep)	0	W
5 (standby)	0	W
6 (ready)	8	W
7 (lowMinus)	8	W
8 (low)	11	W
9 (mediumMinus)	11	W
10 (medium)	11	W
11 (highMinus)	11	W
12 (high)	11	W

Furthermore, this table extends to return the total time in each Power State, along with the number of times a particular Power State was entered."

```

INDEX { entPhysicalIndex,
        eoPowerStateIndex
      }
 ::= { eoPowerStateTable 1 }

EoPowerStateEntry ::= SEQUENCE {
    eoPowerStateIndex          IANAPowerStateSet,
    eoPowerStateMaxPower      Integer32,
    eoPowerStatePowerUnitMultiplier UnitMultiplier,
    eoPowerStateTotalTime     TimeTicks,
    eoPowerStateEnterCount    Counter32
}

eoPowerStateIndex OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          IANAPowerStateSet
    MAX-ACCESS      not-accessible
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "
        This object specifies the index of the Power State of
        the Energy Object within a Power State Set. The

```

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
 semantics of the specific Power State can be obtained
 from the Power State Set definition."
 ::= { eoPowerStateEntry 1 }

eoPowerStateMaxPower OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32
UNITS "Watts"
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
 "This object indicates the maximum power for the Energy
 Object at the particular Power State. This value is
 specified in SI units of watts with the magnitude of the
 units (milliwatts, kilowatts, etc.) indicated separately
 in eoPowerStatePowerUnitMultiplier. If the maximum power
 is not known for a certain Power State, then the value is
 encoded as 0xFFFF.

 For Power States not enumerated, the value of
 eoPowerStateMaxPower might be interpolated by using the
 next highest supported Power State."
 ::= { eoPowerStateEntry 2 }

eoPowerStatePowerUnitMultiplier OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX UnitMultiplier
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
 "The magnitude of watts for the usage value in
 eoPowerStateMaxPower."
 ::= { eoPowerStateEntry 3 }

eoPowerStateTotalTime OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX TimeTicks
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
 "This object indicates the total time in hundredth
 of second that the Energy Object has been in this power
 state since the last reset, as specified in the
 sysUpTime."
 ::= { eoPowerStateEntry 4 }

eoPowerStateEnterCount OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Counter32
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates how often the Energy Object has entered this power state, since the last reset of the device as specified in the sysUpTime."
 ::= { eoPowerStateEntry 5 }

eoEnergyParametersTable OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF EoEnergyParametersEntry

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This table is used to configure the parameters for Energy measurement collection in the table eoEnergyTable. This table allows the configuration of different measurement settings on the same Energy Object. Implementation of this table only sense for energy objects that an eoPowerMeasurementCaliber of actual(3)."
 ::= { energyObjectMibObjects 4 }

eoEnergyParametersEntry OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX EoEnergyParametersEntry

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"An entry controls an energy measurement in eoEnergyTable."

INDEX { eoEnergyObjectIndex, eoEnergyParametersIndex }

::= { eoEnergyParametersTable 1 }

EoEnergyParametersEntry ::= SEQUENCE {
 eoEnergyObjectIndex PhysicalIndex,
 eoEnergyParametersIndex Integer32,
 eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength TimeInterval,
 eoEnergyParametersIntervalNumber Integer32,
 eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode INTEGER,
 eoEnergyParametersIntervalWindow TimeInterval,
 eoEnergyParametersSampleRate Integer32,
 eoEnergyParametersStatus RowStatus
}

eoEnergyObjectIndex OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX PhysicalIndex

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION


```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>    July 2013
    "The unique value, to identify the specific Energy Object
    on which the measurement is applied, the same index used
    in the eoPowerTable to identify the Energy Object."
    ::= { eoEnergyParametersEntry 1 }

eoEnergyParametersIndex OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          Integer32 (0..2147483647)
    MAX-ACCESS      read-create
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This object specifies the index of the Energy
        Parameters setting for collection of energy measurements
        for an Energy Object. An Energy Object can have multiple
        eoEnergyParametersIndex, depending on the capability of
        the Energy Object"
    ::= { eoEnergyParametersEntry 2 }

eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          TimeInterval
    MAX-ACCESS      read-create
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This object indicates the length of time in hundredth of
        seconds over which to compute the average
        eoEnergyConsumed measurement in the eoEnergyTable table.
        The computation is based on the Energy Object's internal
        sampling rate of power consumed or produced by the Energy
        Object. The sampling rate is the rate at which the Energy
        Object can read the power usage and may differ based on
        device capabilities. The average energy consumption is
        then computed over the length of the interval."
    DEFVAL { 90000 }
    ::= { eoEnergyParametersEntry 3 }

eoEnergyParametersIntervalNumber OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          Integer32
    MAX-ACCESS      read-create
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "The number of intervals maintained in the eoEnergyTable.
        Each interval is characterized by a specific
        eoEnergyCollectionStartTime, used as an index to the
        table eoEnergyTable. Whenever the maximum number of
        entries is reached, the measurement over the new interval
        replaces the oldest measurement. There is one exception
        to this rule: when the eoEnergyMaxConsumed and/or
        eoEnergyMaxProduced are in (one of) the two oldest

```

```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>    July 2013
    measurement(s), they are left untouched and the next
    oldest measurement is replaced."
    DEFVAL { 10 }
    ::= { eoEnergyParametersEntry 4 }

eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          INTEGER {
                        period(1),
                        sliding(2),
                        total(3)
                    }
    MAX-ACCESS      read-create
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "A control object to define the mode of interval calculation
        for the computation of the average eoEnergyConsumed or
        eoEnergyProduced measurement in the eoEnergyTable table.

        A mode of period(1) specifies non-overlapping periodic
        measurements.

        A mode of sliding(2) specifies overlapping sliding windows
        where the interval between the start of one interval and
        the next is defined in eoEnergyParametersIntervalWindow.

        A mode of total(3) specifies non-periodic measurement. In
        this mode only one interval is used as this is a
        continuous measurement since the last reset. The value of
        eoEnergyParametersIntervalNumber should be (1) one and
        eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength is ignored. "
    ::= { eoEnergyParametersEntry 5 }

eoEnergyParametersIntervalWindow OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          TimeInterval
    MAX-ACCESS      read-create
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION
        "The length of the duration window between the starting
        time of one sliding window and the next starting time in
        hundredth of seconds, in order to compute the average of
        eoEnergyConsumed, eoEnergyProduced measurements in the
        eoEnergyTable table. This is valid only when the
        eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode is sliding(2). The
        eoEnergyParametersIntervalWindow value should be a multiple
        of eoEnergyParametersSampleRate."
    ::= { eoEnergyParametersEntry 6 }

eoEnergyParametersSampleRate OBJECT-TYPE

```

SYNTAX Integer32
UNITS "Milliseconds"
MAX-ACCESS read-create
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"The sampling rate, in milliseconds, at which the Energy Object should poll power usage in order to compute the average eoEnergyConsumed, eoEnergyProduced measurements in the table eoEnergyTable. The Energy Object should initially set this sampling rate to a reasonable value, i.e., a compromise between intervals that will provide good accuracy by not being too long, but not so short that they affect the Energy Object performance by requesting continuous polling. If the sampling rate is unknown, the value 0 is reported. The sampling rate should be selected so that eoEnergyParametersIntervalWindow is a multiple of eoEnergyParametersSampleRate."

DEFVAL { 1000 }

::= { eoEnergyParametersEntry 7 }

eoEnergyParametersStatus OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX RowStatus
MAX-ACCESS read-create
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"The status of this row. The eoEnergyParametersStatus is used to start or stop energy usage logging. An entry status may not be active(1) unless all objects in the entry have an appropriate value. If this object is not equal to active(1), all associated usage-data logged into the eoEnergyTable will be deleted. The data can be destroyed by setting up the eoEnergyParametersStatus to destroy(2)."

::= {eoEnergyParametersEntry 8 }

eoEnergyTable OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF EoEnergyEntry
MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"This table lists Energy Object energy measurements. Entries in this table are only created if the corresponding value of object eoPowerMeasurementCaliber is active(3), i.e., if the power is actually metered."

::= { energyObjectMibObjects 5 }

eoEnergyEntry OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX EoEnergyEntry
MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"An entry describing energy measurements."

INDEX { eoEnergyParametersIndex,
eoEnergyCollectionStartTime }
::= { eoEnergyTable 1 }

EoEnergyEntry ::= SEQUENCE {

eoEnergyCollectionStartTime TimeTicks,
eoEnergyConsumed Integer32,
eoEnergyProduced Integer32,
eoEnergyNet Integer32,
eoEnergyUnitMultiplier UnitMultiplier,
eoEnergyAccuracy Integer32,
eoEnergyMaxConsumed Integer32,
eoEnergyMaxProduced Integer32,
eoEnergyDiscontinuityTime TimeStamp

}

eoEnergyCollectionStartTime OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX TimeTicks
UNITS "hundredths of seconds"
MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"The time (in hundredths of a second) since the
network management portion of the system was last
re-initialized, as specified in the sysUpTime [RFC3418].
This object specifies the start time of the energy
measurement sample. "

::= { eoEnergyEntry 1 }

eoEnergyConsumed OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32
UNITS "Watt-hours"
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates the energy consumed in units of watt-
hours for the Energy Object over the defined interval.
This value is specified in the common billing units of watt-
hours with the magnitude of watt-hours (kW-Hr, MW-Hr, etc.)
indicated separately in eoEnergyUnitMultiplier."

::= { eoEnergyEntry 2 }

eoEnergyProduced OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32
UNITS "Watt-hours"
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates the energy produced in units of watt-hours for the Energy Object over the defined interval. This value is specified in the common billing units of watt-hours with the magnitude of watt-hours (kW-Hr, MW-Hr, etc.) indicated separately in eoEnergyUnitMultiplier."

::= { eoEnergyEntry 3 }

eoEnergyNet OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32
UNITS "Watt-hours"
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates the resultant of the energy consumed and energy produced for an energy object in units of watt-hours for the Energy Object over the defined interval. This value is specified in the common billing units of watt-hours with the magnitude of watt-hours (kW-Hr, MW-Hr, etc.) indicated separately in eoEnergyUnitMultiplier."

::= { eoEnergyEntry 4 }

eoEnergyUnitMultiplier OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX UnitMultiplier
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object is the magnitude of watt-hours for the energy field in eoEnergyConsumed, eoEnergyProduced, eoEnergyNet, eoEnergyMaxConsumed, and eoEnergyMaxProduced."

::= { eoEnergyEntry 5 }

eoEnergyAccuracy OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32 (0..10000)
UNITS "hundredths of percent"
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This object indicates a percentage value, in 100ths of a percent, representing the presumed accuracy of Energy usage reporting. eoEnergyAccuracy is applicable to all Energy measurements in the eoEnergyTable.

For example: 1010 means the reported usage is accurate to +/- 10.1 percent.

This value is zero if the accuracy is unknown."

::= { eoEnergyEntry 6 }

eoEnergyMaxConsumed OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32
UNITS "Watt-hours"
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"This object is the maximum energy ever observed in eoEnergyConsumed since the monitoring started. This value is specified in the common billing units of watt-hours with the magnitude of watt-hours (kW-Hr, MW-Hr, etc.) indicated separately in eoEnergyUnitMultiplier."

::= { eoEnergyEntry 7 }

eoEnergyMaxProduced OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32
UNITS "Watt-hours"
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"This object is the maximum energy ever observed in eoEnergyEnergyProduced since the monitoring started. This value is specified in the units of watt-hours with the magnitude of watt-hours (kW-Hr, MW-Hr, etc.) indicated separately in eoEnergyEnergyUnitMultiplier."

::= { eoEnergyEntry 8 }

eoEnergyDiscontinuityTime OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX TimeStamp
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"The value of sysUpTime [RFC3418] on the most recent occasion at which any one or more of this entity's energy

```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>    July 2013
    counters in this table suffered a discontinuity:
    eoEnergyConsumed, eoEnergyProduced or eoEnergyNet. If no
    such discontinuities have occurred since the last re-
    initialization of the local management subsystem, then
    this object contains a zero value."
    ::= { eoEnergyEntry 9 }

-- Notifications

eoPowerEnableStatusNotification OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          TruthValue
    MAX-ACCESS      read-write
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION     "This variable indicates whether the
    system produces the following notifications:
    eoPowerStateChange.

    A false value will prevent these notifications
    from being generated."
    DEFVAL          { false }
    ::= { energyObjectMibNotifs 1 }

eoPowerStateChange NOTIFICATION-TYPE
    OBJECTS          {eoPowerAdminState, eoPowerOperState,
eoPowerStateEnterReason}
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION     "The SNMP entity generates the eoPowerStateChange when
    the value(s) of eoPowerAdminState or eoPowerOperState,
    in the context of the Power State Set, have changed for
    the Energy Object represented by the entPhysicalIndex."
    ::= { energyObjectMibNotifs 2 }

-- Conformance

energyObjectMibCompliances OBJECT IDENTIFIER
    ::= { energyObjectMib 3 }

energyObjectMibGroups OBJECT IDENTIFIER
    ::= { energyObjectMib 4 }

energyObjectMibFullCompliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE
    STATUS          current
    DESCRIPTION     "When this MIB is implemented with support for

```

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
read-create, then such an implementation can
claim full compliance. Such devices can then
be both monitored and configured with this MIB.

Module Compliance of [RFC6933]
with respect to entity4CRCompliance should
be supported which requires implementation
of 3 MIB objects (entPhysicalIndex,
entPhysicalName and entPhysicalUUID)."

```
MODULE          -- this module
MANDATORY-GROUPS {
    energyObjectMibTableGroup,
    energyObjectMibStateTableGroup,
    eoPowerEnableStatusNotificationGroup,
    energyObjectMibNotifGroup
}

GROUP          energyObjectMibEnergyTableGroup

DESCRIPTION "A compliant implementation does not
have to implement.
```

Module Compliance of [RFC6933]
with respect to entity4CRCompliance should
be supported which requires implementation
of 3 MIB objects (entPhysicalIndex,
entPhysicalName and entPhysicalUUID)."

```
GROUP          energyObjectMibEnergyParametersTableGroup

DESCRIPTION "A compliant implementation does not
have to implement.
```

Module Compliance of [RFC6933]
with respect to entity4CRCompliance should
be supported which requires implementation
of 3 MIB objects (entPhysicalIndex,
entPhysicalName and entPhysicalUUID)."

```
GROUP          energyObjectMibMeterCapabilitiesTableGroup

DESCRIPTION "A compliant implementation does not
have to implement.
```

Module Compliance of [RFC6933]

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
with respect to entity4CRCompliance should
be supported which requires implementation
of 3 MIB objects (entPhysicalIndex,
entPhysicalName and entPhysicalUUID)."

::= { energyObjectMibCompliances 1 }

energyObjectMibReadOnlyCompliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
 "When this MIB is implemented without support for
 read-create (i.e. in read-only mode), then such an
 implementation can claim read-only compliance. Such a
 device can then be monitored but cannot be
 configured with this MIB.

Module Compliance of [RFC6933]
with respect to entity4CRCompliance should
be supported which requires implementation
of 3 MIB objects (entPhysicalIndex,
entPhysicalName and entPhysicalUUID)."

MODULE -- this module
MANDATORY-GROUPS {
 energyObjectMibTableGroup,
 energyObjectMibStateTableGroup,
 energyObjectMibNotifGroup
}

OBJECT eoPowerOperState
MIN-ACCESS read-only
DESCRIPTION
 "Write access is not required."
::= { energyObjectMibCompliances 2 }

-- Units of Conformance

energyObjectMibTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP
OBJECTS {
 eoPower,
 eoPowerNameplate,
 eoPowerUnitMultiplier,
 eoPowerAccuracy,
 eoPowerMeasurementCaliber,
 eoPowerCurrentType,
 eoPowerOrigin,

```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>    July 2013

                                eoPowerAdminState,
                                eoPowerOperState,
                                eoPowerStateEnterReason
                                }
                                STATUS                current
DESCRIPTION
    "This group contains the collection of all the objects
    related to the Energy Object."
 ::= { energyObjectMibGroups 1 }

energyObjectMibStateTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP
    OBJECTS
        {
            eoPowerStateMaxPower,
            eoPowerStatePowerUnitMultiplier,
            eoPowerStateTotalTime,
            eoPowerStateEnterCount
        }
    STATUS                current
DESCRIPTION
    "This group contains the collection of all the
    objects related to the Power State."
 ::= { energyObjectMibGroups 2 }

energyObjectMibEnergyParametersTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP
    OBJECTS
        {
            eoEnergyParametersIndex,
            eoEnergyParametersIntervalLength,
            eoEnergyParametersIntervalNumber,
            eoEnergyParametersIntervalMode,
            eoEnergyParametersIntervalWindow,
            eoEnergyParametersSampleRate,
            eoEnergyParametersStatus
        }
    STATUS                current
DESCRIPTION
    "This group contains the collection of all the objects
    related to the configuration of the Energy Table."
 ::= { energyObjectMibGroups 3 }

energyObjectMibEnergyTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP
    OBJECTS
        {
            -- Note that object
            -- eoEnergyCollectionStartTime is not
            -- included since it is not-accessible

```

```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>    July 2013

        eoEnergyConsumed,
        eoEnergyProduced,
        eoEnergyNet,
        eoEnergyUnitMultiplier,
        eoEnergyAccuracy,
        eoEnergyMaxConsumed,
        eoEnergyMaxProduced,
        eoEnergyDiscontinuityTime
    }
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "This group contains the collection of all the objects
    related to the Energy Table."
::= { energyObjectMibGroups 4 }


energyObjectMibMeterCapabilitiesTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP
OBJECTS            {
                    eoMeterCapability
                }
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "This group contains the object indicating the
    capability of the Energy Object"
::= { energyObjectMibGroups 5 }


eoPowerEnableStatusNotificationGroup OBJECT-GROUP
OBJECTS            { eoPowerEnableStatusNotification }
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION        "The collection of objects which are used
                    to enable notification."
::= { energyObjectMibGroups 6 }


energyObjectMibNotifGroup NOTIFICATION-GROUP
NOTIFICATIONS      {
                    eoPowerStateChange
                }
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION        "This group contains the notifications for
                    the power and energy monitoring MIB Module."
::= { energyObjectMibGroups 7 }

```

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
END

```
-- *****
--
-- This MIB module is used to monitor power attributes of
-- networked devices with measurements.
--
-- This MIB module is an extension of energyObjectMib module.
--
-- *****
```

POWER- ATTRIBUTES -MIB DEFINITIONS ::= BEGIN

```
IMPORTS
    MODULE-IDENTITY,
    OBJECT-TYPE,
    mib-2,
    Integer32
        FROM SNMPv2-SMI
    MODULE-COMPLIANCE,
    OBJECT-GROUP
        FROM SNMPv2-CONF
    UnitMultiplier
        FROM ENERGY-OBJECT-MIB
    OwnerString
        FROM RMON-MIB
    entPhysicalIndex
        FROM ENTITY-MIB;
```

powerAttributesMIB MODULE-IDENTITY

```
    LAST-UPDATED      "201306300000Z"      -- 30 June 2013

    ORGANIZATION      "IETF EMAN Working Group"

    CONTACT-INFO
        "WG charter:
        http://datatracker.ietf.org/wg/eman/charter/

        Mailing Lists:
        General Discussion: eman@ietf.org

        To Subscribe:
        https://www.ietf.org/mailman/listinfo/eman

        Archive:
        http://www.ietf.org/mail-archive/web/eman
```

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
Editors:

Mouli Chandramouli
Cisco Systems, Inc.
Sarjapur Outer Ring Road
Bangalore 560103
IN
Phone: +91 80 4429 2409
Email: moulchan@cisco.com

Brad Schoening
44 Rivers Edge Drive
Little Silver, NJ 07739
US
Email: brad.schoening@verizon.net

Juergen Quittek
NEC Europe Ltd.
NEC Laboratories Europe
Network Research Division
Kurfuersten-Anlage 36
Heidelberg 69115
DE
Phone: +49 6221 4342-115
Email: quittek@neclab.eu

Thomas Dietz
NEC Europe Ltd.
NEC Laboratories Europe
Network Research Division
Kurfuersten-Anlage 36
69115 Heidelberg
DE
Phone: +49 6221 4342-128
Email: Thomas.Dietz@nw.neclab.eu

Benoit Claise
Cisco Systems, Inc.
De Kleetlaan 6a b1
Degem 1831
Belgium
Phone: +32 2 704 5622
Email: bclaise@cisco.com"

DESCRIPTION

"This MIB is used to report AC power attributes in devices. The table is a sparse augmentation of the eoPowerTable table from the energyObjectMib module.

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
Both three-phase and single-phase power
configurations are supported.

As a requirement for this MIB module,
[EMAN-AWARE-MIB] should be implemented.

Module Compliance of ENTITY-MIB v4
with respect to entity4CRCompliance should
be supported which requires implementation
of 3 MIB objects (entPhysicalIndex,
entPhysicalName and entPhysicalUUID)."

REVISION

"201306300000Z" -- 30 June 2013

DESCRIPTION

"Initial version, published as RFC YYY."

::= { mib-2 yyy }

powerAttributesMIBConform OBJECT IDENTIFIER
::= { powerAttributesMIB 0 }

powerAttributesMIBObjects OBJECT IDENTIFIER
::= { powerAttributesMIB 1 }

-- Objects

eoACPwrAttributesTable OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF EoACPwrAttributesEntry
MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
"This table defines power attributes measurements for
supported entPhysicalIndex entities. It is a sparse
extension of the eoPowerTable."
::= { powerAttributesMIBObjects 1 }

eoACPwrAttributesEntry OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX EoACPwrAttributesEntry
MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
 "This is a sparse extension of the eoPowerTable with
 entries for power attributes measurements or
 configuration. Each measured value corresponds to an
 attribute in IEC 61850-7-4 for non-phase measurements
 within the object MMUX."

```
INDEX {entPhysicalIndex }
      ::= { eoACPwrAttributesTable 1 }
```

```
EoACPwrAttributesEntry ::= SEQUENCE {
    eoACPwrAttributesConfiguration      INTEGER,
    eoACPwrAttributesAvgVoltage         Integer32,
    eoACPwrAttributesAvgCurrent         Integer32,
    eoACPwrAttributesFrequency          Integer32,
    eoACPwrAttributesPowerUnitMultiplier UnitMultiplier,
    eoACPwrAttributesPowerAccuracy      Integer32,
    eoACPwrAttributesTotalActivePower   Integer32,
    eoACPwrAttributesTotalReactivePower Integer32,
    eoACPwrAttributesTotalApparentPower Integer32,
    eoACPwrAttributesTotalPowerFactor   Integer32,
    eoACPwrAttributesThdAmperes         Integer32,
    eoACPwrAttributesThdVoltage         Integer32
}
```

eoACPwrAttributesConfiguration OBJECT-TYPE

```
SYNTAX INTEGER {
    sngl(1),
    del(2),
    wye(3)
}
```

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"Configuration describes the physical configurations
of the power supply lines:

- * alternating current, single phase (SNGL)
- * alternating current, three phase delta (DEL)
- * alternating current, three phase Y (WYE)

Three-phase configurations can be either connected in
a triangular delta (DEL) or star Y (WYE) system. WYE
systems have a shared neutral voltage, while DEL
systems do not. Each phase is offset 120 degrees to
each other."

```
::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 1 }
```

eoACPwrAttributesAvgVoltage OBJECT-TYPE

```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>   July 2013
SYNTAX            Integer32
UNITS             "0.1 Volt AC"
MAX-ACCESS        read-only
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "A measured value for average of the voltage measured
    over an integral number of AC cycles. For a 3-phase
    system, this is the average voltage (V1+V2+V3)/3. IEC
    61850-7-4 measured value attribute 'Vol'"
 ::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 2 }

eoACPwrAttributesAvgCurrent OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX            Integer32
UNITS             "Amperes"
MAX-ACCESS        read-only
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "A measured value of the current per phase. IEC 61850-
    7-4 attribute 'Amp'"
 ::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 3 }

eoACPwrAttributesFrequency OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX            Integer32 (4500..6500) -- UNITS 0.01 Hertz
UNITS             "hertz"
MAX-ACCESS        read-only
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "A measured value for the basic frequency of the AC
    circuit. IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'Hz'."
 ::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 4 }

eoACPwrAttributesPowerUnitMultiplier OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX            UnitMultiplier
MAX-ACCESS        read-only
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "The magnitude of watts for the usage value in
    eoACPwrAttributesTotalActivePower,
    eoACPwrAttributesTotalReactivePower
    and eoACPwrAttributesTotalApparentPower measurements.
    For 3-phase power systems, this will also include
    eoACPwrAttributesPhaseActivePower,
    eoACPwrAttributesPhaseReactivePower and
    eoACPwrAttributesPhaseApparentPower"
 ::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 5 }

eoACPwrAttributesPowerAccuracy OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX            Integer32 (0..10000)

```



```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>   July 2013
    UNITS          "hundredths of percent"
    MAX-ACCESS     read-only
    STATUS         current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This object indicates a percentage value, in 100ths of
        a percent, representing the presumed accuracy of
        active, reactive, and apparent power usage reporting.
        For example: 1010 means the reported usage is accurate
        to +/- 10.1 percent.  This value is zero if the
        accuracy is unknown.

        ANSI and IEC define the following accuracy classes for
        power measurement: IEC 62053-22 & 60044-1 class 0.1,
        0.2, 0.5, 1 & 3.
        ANSI C12.20 class 0.2 & 0.5"
    ::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 6 }

eoACPwrAttributesTotalActivePower OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          Integer32
    UNITS           " watts"
    MAX-ACCESS     read-only
    STATUS         current
    DESCRIPTION
        "A measured value of the actual power delivered to or
        consumed by the load.  IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'TotW'."
    ::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 7 }

eoACPwrAttributesTotalReactivePower OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          Integer32
    UNITS           "volt-amperes reactive"
    MAX-ACCESS     read-only
    STATUS         current
    DESCRIPTION
        "A measured value of the reactive portion of the
        apparent power.  IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'TotVAr'."
    ::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 8 }

eoACPwrAttributesTotalApparentPower OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX          Integer32
    UNITS           "volt-amperes"
    MAX-ACCESS     read-only
    STATUS         current
    DESCRIPTION
        "A measured value of the voltage and current which
        determines the apparent power.  The apparent power is
        the vector sum of real and reactive power.

```

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
Note: watts and volt-amperes are equivalent units and
may be combined. IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'TotVA'."
::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 9 }

eoACPwrAttributesTotalPowerFactor OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX Integer32 (-10000..10000)
UNITS "hundredths of percent"
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
"A measured value ratio of the real power flowing to
the load versus the apparent power. It is dimensionless
and expressed here as a percentage value in 100ths of a
percent. A power factor of 100% indicates there is no
inductance load and thus no reactive power. Power
Factor can be positive or negative, where the sign
should be in lead/lag (IEEE) form. IEC 61850-7-4
attribute 'TotPF'."
::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 10 }

eoACPwrAttributesThdAmperes OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX Integer32 (0..10000)
UNITS "hundredths of percent"
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
"A calculated value for the current total harmonic
distortion (THD). Method of calculation is not
specified. IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'ThdAmp'."
::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 11 }

eoACPwrAttributesThdVoltage OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX Integer32 (0..10000)
UNITS "hundredths of percent"
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION
"A calculated value for the voltage total harmonic
distortion (THD). Method of calculation is not
specified. IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'ThdVol'."
::= { eoACPwrAttributesEntry 12 }

eoACPwrAttributesPhaseTable OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF EoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry
MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013

"This table describes 3-phase power attributes measurements. It is a sparse extension of the eoACPwrAttributesTable."

::= { powerAttributesMIBObjects 2 }

eoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX EoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"An entry describes common 3-phase power attributes measurements."

This optional table describes 3-phase power attributes measurements, with three entries for each supported entPhysicalIndex entity. Entities having single phase power shall not have any entities.

This table describes attributes common to both WYE and DEL. Entities having single phase power shall not have any entries here. It is a sparse extension of the eoACPwrAttributesTable.

These attributes correspond to IEC 61850-7.4 MMXU phase measurements."

INDEX { entPhysicalIndex, eoPhaseIndex }

::= { eoACPwrAttributesPhaseTable 1 }

EoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry ::= SEQUENCE {

eoPhaseIndex Integer32,
eoACPwrAttributesPhaseAvgCurrent Integer32,
eoACPwrAttributesPhaseActivePower Integer32,
eoACPwrAttributesPhaseReactivePower Integer32,
eoACPwrAttributesPhaseApparentPower Integer32,
eoACPwrAttributesPhasePowerFactor Integer32,
eoACPwrAttributesPhaseImpedance Integer32

}

eoPhaseIndex OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32 (0..359)

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"A phase angle typically corresponding to 0, 120, 240."

::= { eoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry 1 }

eoACPwrAttributesPhaseAvgCurrent OBJECT-TYPE

```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>    July 2013

SYNTAX            Integer32
UNITS             "Amperes"
MAX-ACCESS        read-only
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "A measured value of the current per phase. IEC 61850-
    7-4 attribute 'A'"
 ::= { eoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry 2 }

eoACPwrAttributesPhaseActivePower OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX            Integer32
UNITS             " watts"
MAX-ACCESS        read-only
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "A measured value of the actual power delivered to or
    consumed by the load. IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'W'"
 ::= { eoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry 3 }

eoACPwrAttributesPhaseReactivePower OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX            Integer32
UNITS             "volt-amperes reactive"
MAX-ACCESS        read-only
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "A measured value of the reactive portion of the
    apparent power. IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'VAr'"
 ::= { eoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry 4 }

eoACPwrAttributesPhaseApparentPower OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX            Integer32
UNITS             "volt-amperes"
MAX-ACCESS        read-only
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "A measured value of the voltage and current determines
    the apparent power. Active plus reactive power equals
    the total apparent power.

    Note: Watts and volt-amperes are equivalent units and
    may be combined. IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'VA'."
 ::= { eoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry 5 }

eoACPwrAttributesPhasePowerFactor OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX            Integer32 (-10000..10000)
UNITS             "hundredths of percent"
MAX-ACCESS        read-only
STATUS            current

```

DESCRIPTION

"A measured value ratio of the real power flowing to the load versus the apparent power for this phase. IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'PF'. Power Factor can be positive or negative where the sign should be in lead/lag (IEEE) form."

::= { eoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry 6 }

eoACPwrAttributesPhaseImpedance OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32
UNITS "volt-amperes"
MAX-ACCESS read-only
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"A measured value of the impedance. IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'Z'."

::= { eoACPwrAttributesPhaseEntry 7 }

eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseTable OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF EoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseEntry
MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"This table describes DEL configuration phase-to-phase power attributes measurements. This is a sparse extension of the eoACPwrAttributesPhaseTable."

::= { powerAttributesMIBObjects 3 }

eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseEntry OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX EoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseEntry
MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
STATUS current
DESCRIPTION

"An entry describes power attributes attributes of a phase in a DEL 3-phase power system. Voltage measurements are provided both relative to each other and zero.

Measured values are from IEC 61850-7-2 MMUX and THD from MHAI objects.

For phase-to-phase measurements, the eoPhaseIndex is compared against the following phase at +120 degrees. Thus, the possible values are:

eoPhaseIndex	Next Phase Angle
0	120
120	240

```
"
INDEX { entPhysicalIndex, eoPhaseIndex}
 ::= { eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseTable 1}

EoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseEntry ::= SEQUENCE {
    eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseToNextPhaseVoltage      Integer32,
    eoACPwrAttributesDelThdPhaseToNextPhaseVoltage   Integer32,
    eoACPwrAttributesDelThdCurrent                   Integer32
}

eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseToNextPhaseVoltage OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX      Integer32
    UNITS       "0.1 Volt AC"
    MAX-ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS      current
    DESCRIPTION
        "A measured value of phase to next phase voltages, where
         the next phase is IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'PPV'."
    ::= { eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseEntry 2 }

eoACPwrAttributesDelThdPhaseToNextPhaseVoltage OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX      Integer32 (0..10000)
    UNITS       "hundredths of percent"
    MAX-ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS      current
    DESCRIPTION
        "A calculated value for the voltage total harmonic
         disortion for phase to next phase. Method of calculation
         is not specified. IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'ThdPPV'."
    ::= { eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseEntry 3 }

eoACPwrAttributesDelThdCurrent OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX      Integer32 (0..10000)
    UNITS       "hundredths of percent"
    MAX-ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS      current
    DESCRIPTION
        "A calculated value for the voltage total harmonic
         disortion (THD) for phase to phase. Method of
         calculation is not specified.
         IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'ThdPPV'."
    ::= { eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseEntry 4 }

eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseTable OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX      SEQUENCE OF EoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseEntry
    MAX-ACCESS  not-accessible
    STATUS      current
```

DESCRIPTION

"This table describes WYE configuration phase-to-neutral power attributes measurements. This is a sparse extension of the eoACPwrAttributesPhaseTable."

::= { powerAttributesMIBObjects 4 }

eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseEntry OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX EoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseEntry

MAX-ACCESS not-accessible

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This table describes measurements of WYE configuration with phase to neutral power attributes attributes. Three entries are required for each supported entPhysicalIndex entry. Voltage measurements are relative to neutral.

This is a sparse extension of the
eoACPwrAttributesPhaseTable.

Each entry describes power attributes attributes of one phase of a WYE 3-phase power system.

Measured values are from IEC 61850-7-2 MMUX and THD from MHAI objects."

INDEX { entPhysicalIndex, eoPhaseIndex }

::= { eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseTable 1 }

EoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseEntry ::= SEQUENCE {
 eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseToNeutralVoltage Integer32,
 eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseCurrent Integer32,
 eoACPwrAttributesWyeThdPhaseToNeutralVoltage
Integer32
}

eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseToNeutralVoltage OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32

UNITS "0.1 Volt AC"

MAX-ACCESS read-only

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"A measured value of phase to neutral voltage. IEC 61850-7-4 attribute 'PhV'."

::= { eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseEntry 1 }

eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseCurrent OBJECT-TYPE

SYNTAX Integer32

UNITS "0.1 amperes AC"

MAX-ACCESS read-only

```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>    July 2013
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "A measured value of phase currents.  IEC 61850-7-4
    attribute 'A'."
    ::= { eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseEntry 2 }

eoACPwrAttributesWyeThdPhaseToNeutralVoltage OBJECT-TYPE
SYNTAX            Integer32 (0..10000)
UNITS             "hundredths of percent"
MAX-ACCESS        read-only
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "A calculated value of the voltage total harmonic
    distortion (THD) for phase to neutral. IEC 61850-7-4
    attribute 'ThdPhV'."
    ::= { eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseEntry 3 }

-- Conformance

powerAttributesMIBCompliances OBJECT IDENTIFIER
    ::= { powerAttributesMIB 2 }

powerAttributesMIBGroups OBJECT IDENTIFIER
    ::= { powerAttributesMIB 3 }

powerAttributesMIBFullCompliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "When this MIB is implemented with support for read-create,
    then such an implementation can claim full compliance.
    Such devices can then be both monitored and configured with
    this MIB.

    Module Compliance of [RFC6933] with respect to
    entity4CRCompliance should be supported which requires
    implementation of 3 MIB objects (entPhysicalIndex,
    entPhysicalName and entPhysicalUUID)."
```

```

MODULE            -- this module
MANDATORY-GROUPS {
    powerACPwrAttributesMIBTableGroup
}

GROUP             powerACPwrAttributesOptionalMIBTableGroup

```


DESCRIPTION

"A compliant implementation does not have to implement."

GROUP powerACPwrAttributesPhaseMIBTableGroup

DESCRIPTION

"A compliant implementation does not have to implement."

GROUP powerACPwrAttributesDelPhaseMIBTableGroup

DESCRIPTION

"A compliant implementation does not have to implement."

GROUP powerACPwrAttributesWyePhaseMIBTableGroup

DESCRIPTION

"A compliant implementation does not have to implement."

::= { powerAttributesMIBCompliances 1 }

-- Units of Conformance

powerACPwrAttributesMIBTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP

OBJECTS

{
-- Note that object entPhysicalIndex is NOT
-- included since it is not-accessible

eoACPwrAttributesAvgVoltage,
eoACPwrAttributesAvgCurrent,
eoACPwrAttributesFrequency,
eoACPwrAttributesPowerUnitMultiplier,
eoACPwrAttributesPowerAccuracy,
eoACPwrAttributesTotalActivePower,
eoACPwrAttributesTotalReactivePower,
eoACPwrAttributesTotalApparentPower,
eoACPwrAttributesTotalPowerFactor
}

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This group contains the collection of all the power attributes objects related to the Energy Object."

::= { powerAttributesMIBGroups 1 }

powerACPwrAttributesOptionalMIBTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP

```
OBJECTS      {
                eoACPwrAttributesConfiguration,
                eoACPwrAttributesThdAmperes,
                eoACPwrAttributesThdVoltage
            }
```

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This group contains the collection of all the power attributes objects related to the Energy Object."

::= { powerAttributesMIBGroups 2 }

powerACPwrAttributesPhaseMIBTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP

```
OBJECTS      {
                -- Note that object entPhysicalIndex is
                -- NOT included since it is
                -- not-accessible
                eoACPwrAttributesPhaseAvgCurrent,
                eoACPwrAttributesPhaseActivePower,
                eoACPwrAttributesPhaseReactivePower,
                eoACPwrAttributesPhaseApparentPower,
                eoACPwrAttributesPhasePowerFactor,
                eoACPwrAttributesPhaseImpedance
            }
```

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This group contains the collection of all 3-phase power attributes objects related to the Power State."

::= { powerAttributesMIBGroups 3 }

powerACPwrAttributesDelPhaseMIBTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP

```
OBJECTS      {
                -- Note that object entPhysicalIndex and
                -- eoPhaseIndex are NOT included
                -- since they are not-accessible
                eoACPwrAttributesDelPhaseToNextPhaseVoltage,
                eoACPwrAttributesDelThdPhaseToNextPhaseVoltage,
                eoACPwrAttributesDelThdCurrent
            }
```

STATUS current

DESCRIPTION

"This group contains the collection of all power characteristic attributes of a phase in a DEL 3-phase power system."

::= { powerAttributesMIBGroups 4 }

```

Internet-Draft    <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB>   July 2013
powerACPwrAttributesWyePhaseMIBTableGroup OBJECT-GROUP
OBJECTS           {
                    -- Note that object entPhysicalIndex and
                    -- eoPhaseIndex are NOT included
                    -- since they are not-accessible

                    eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseToNeutralVoltage,
                    eoACPwrAttributesWyePhaseCurrent,
                    eoACPwrAttributesWyeThdPhaseToNeutralVoltage
                    }
STATUS            current
DESCRIPTION
    "This group contains the collection of all WYE
    configuration phase-to-neutral power attributes
    measurements."
 ::= { powerAttributesMIBGroups 5 }

END

```

11. Implementation Status

[RFC Editor: before publication please remove this section and the reference to [I-D.sheffer-running-code], along the offered experiment of which this section exists to assist document reviewers.]

At the time of this writing the mandatory tables of the MIB module eoPowerTable and eoPowerStateTable have been implemented as a standalone prototype for monitoring the energy consumption of routers and switches. Network Management support for querying MIB objects is under development.

12. Security Considerations

Some of the readable objects in these MIB modules (i.e., objects with a MAX-ACCESS other than not-accessible) may be considered sensitive or vulnerable in some network environments. It is thus important to control even GET and/or NOTIFY access to these

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
objects and possibly to even encrypt the values of these objects
when sending them over the network via SNMP.

There are a number of management objects defined in these MIB modules with a MAX-ACCESS clause of read-write and/or read-create. Such objects MAY be considered sensitive or vulnerable in some network environments. The support for SET operations in a non-secure environment without proper protection can have a negative effect on network operations. The following are the tables and objects and their sensitivity/vulnerability:

- Unauthorized changes to the eoPowerOperState (via theeoPowerAdminState) MAY disrupt the power settings of the differentEnergy Objects, and therefore the state of functionality of the respective Energy Objects.
- Unauthorized changes to the eoEnergyParametersTable MAY disrupt energy measurement in the eoEnergyTable table.

SNMP versions prior to SNMPv3 did not include adequate security. Even if the network itself is secure (for example, by using IPsec), there is still no secure control over who on the secure network is allowed to access and GET/SET (read/change/create/delete) the objects in these MIB modules.

It is RECOMMENDED that implementers consider the security features as provided by the SNMPv3 framework (see [RFC3410], section 8), including full support for the SNMPv3 cryptographic mechanisms (for authentication and privacy).

Further, deployment of SNMP versions prior to SNMPv3 is NOT RECOMMENDED. Instead, it is RECOMMENDED to deploy SNMPv3 and to enable cryptographic security. It is then a customer/operator responsibility to ensure that the SNMP entity giving access to an instance of these MIB modules is properly configured to give access to the objects only to those principals (users) that have legitimate rights to GET or SET (change/create/delete) them.

13. IANA Considerations

13.1. IANA Considerations for the MIB Modules

The MIB modules in this document uses the following IANA-assigned OBJECT IDENTIFIER values recorded in the SMI Numbers registry:

Descriptor	OBJECT IDENTIFIER value
-----	-----
energyObjectMib	{ mib-2 xxx }
powerAttributesMIB	{ mib-2 yyy }

Additions to the MIB modules are subject to Expert Review [RFC5226], i.e., review by one of a group of experts designated by an IETF Area Director. The group of experts MUST check the requested MIB objects for completeness and accuracy of the description. Requests for MIB objects that duplicate the functionality of existing objects SHOULD be declined. The smallest available OIDs SHOULD be assigned to the new MIB objects. The specification of new MIB objects SHOULD follow the structure specified in Section 10. and MUST be published using a well-established and persistent publication medium.

13.2. IANA Registration of new Power State Set

The initial set of Power State Sets are specified in [EMAN-FMWK]. IANA maintains a Textual Convention IANAPowerStateSet with the initial set of Power State Sets and the Power States within those Power State Sets as proposed in the [EMAN-FMWK]. The current version of IANAPowerStateSet Textual convention can be accessed <http://www.iana.org/assignments/IANAPowerStateSet>

New Assignments to Power State Sets shall be administered by IANA and the guidelines and procedures are specified in [EMAN-FMWK].

13.2.1. IANA Registration of the IEEE1621 Power State Set

The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has created a new registry for IEEE1621 Power State Set identifiers and filled it with the initial list in the Textual Convention IANAPowerStateSet.

Guidelines for new assignments (or potentially deprecation) for IEEE1621 Power State Set are specified in [EMAN-FMWK].

13.2.2. IANA Registration of the DMTF Power State Set

The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has created a new registry for DMTF Power State Set identifiers and filled it in the Textual Convention IANAPowerStateSet.

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
Guidelines for new assignments (or potentially deprecation) for
DMTF Power State Set are specified in [EMAN-FMWK].

13.2.3. IANA Registration of the EMAN Power State Set

The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has created a new registry for EMAN Power State Set identifiers and filled it in the Textual Convention IANAPowerStateSet.

Guidelines for new assignments (or potentially deprecation) for EMAN Power State Set are specified in [EMAN-FMWK].

13.3. Updating the Registration of Existing Power State Sets

IANA maintains a Textual Convention IANAPowerStateSet with the initial set of Power State Sets and the Power States within those Power State Sets. The current version of Textual convention can be accessed
<http://www.iana.org/assignments/IANAPowerStateSet>

With the evolution of standards, over time, it may be important to deprecate some of the existing the Power State Sets or some of the states within a Power State Set.

The registrant shall publish an Internet-draft or an individual submission with the clear specification on deprecation of Power State Sets or Power States registered with IANA. The deprecation shall be administered by IANA through Expert Review [RFC5226], i.e., review by one of a group of experts designated by an IETF Area Director. The process should also allow for a mechanism for cases where others have significant objections to claims on deprecation of a registration. In cases, where the registrant cannot be reached, IESG can designate an Expert to modify the IANA registry for the deprecation.

12. Contributors

This document results from the merger of two initial proposals. The following persons made significant contributions either in one of the initial proposals or in this document.

John Parello

Rolf Winter

13. Acknowledgment

The authors would like to thank Shamita Pisal for her prototype of this MIB module, and her valuable feedback. The authors would like to Michael Brown for improving the text dramatically.

We would like to thank Juergen Schoenwalder for proposing the design of the Textual Convention for IANAPowerStateSet and Ira McDonald for his feedback. Thanks for the many comments on the design of the EnergyTable from Minoru Teraoka and Hiroto Ogaki.

14. Open Issues

OPEN ISSUE 1 check if all the requirements from [EMAN-REQ] are covered. Nominal Voltage to be reported as a range ?

OPEN ISSUE 2 IANA Registered Power State Sets deferred to [EMAN-FMWK]

15. References

15.2. Normative References

- [RFC2119] S. Bradner, Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels, BCP 14, RFC 2119, March 1997.
- [RFC2578] McCloghrie, K., Ed., Perkins, D., Ed., and J. Schoenwaelder, Ed., "Structure of Management Information Version 2 (SMIv2)", STD 58, RFC 2578, April 1999.
- [RFC2579] McCloghrie, K., Ed., Perkins, D., Ed., and J. Schoenwaelder, Ed., "Textual Conventions for SMIv2", STD 58, RFC 2579, April 1999.

- Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
[RFC2580] McCloghrie, K., Perkins, D., and J. Schoenwaelder,
"Conformance Statements for SMIV2", STD 58, RFC 2580,
April 1999.
- [RFC3621] Berger, A., and D. Romascanu, "Power Ethernet MIB",
RFC3621, December 2003.
- [RFC4133] Bierman, A. and K. McCloghrie, "Entity MIB (Version
3)", RFC 4133, August 2005.
- [LLDP-MED-MIB] ANSI/TIA-1057, "The LLDP Management Information
Base extension module for TIA-TR41.4 media endpoint
discovery information", July 2005.
- [EMAN-AWARE-MIB] J. Parello, B. Claise and M. Chandramoili,
"draft-ietf-eman-energy-aware-mib-09 ", work in
progress, July 2013.

15.3. Informative References

- [RFC1628] S. Bradner, "UPS Management Information Base", RFC
1628, May 1994
- [RFC3410] Case, J., Mundy, R., Partain, D., and B. Stewart,
"Introduction and Applicability Statements for Internet
Standard Management Framework ", RFC 3410, December
2002.
- [RFC3418] Presun, R., Case, J., McCloghrie, K., Rose, M, and S.
Waldbusser, "Management Information Base (MIB) for the
Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)", RFC3418,
December 2002.
- [RFC3433] Bierman, A., Romascanu, D., and K. Norseth, "Entity
Sensor Management Information Base", RFC 3433, December
2002.
- [RFC4268] Chisholm, S. and D. Perkins, "Entity State MIB", RFC
4268, November 2005.
- [RFC5226] Narten, T. Alverstrand, H., A. and K. McCloghrie,
"Guidelines for Writing an IANA Considerations Section
in RFCs ", BCP 26, RFC 5226, May 2008.

- Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
- [EMAN-REQ] Quittek, J., Winter, R., Dietz, T., Claise, B., and M. Chandramouli, " Requirements for Energy Management", draft-ietf-eman-requirements-14, May 2013.
- [EMAN-FMWK] Claise, B., Parello, J., Schoening, B., Quittek, J. and Nordman, B, "Energy Management Framework", draft-ietf-eman-framework-08, July 2013.
- [EMAN-MONITORING-MIB] M. Chandramouli, Schoening, B., Dietz, T., Quittek, J. and B. Claise "Energy and Power Monitoring MIB ", draft-ietf-eman-energy-monitoring-mib-05, April 2013.
- [EMAN-AS] Schoening, B., Chandramouli, M. and Nordman, B. "Energy Management (EMAN) Applicability Statement", draft-ietf-eman-applicability-statement-03, April 2013.
- [RFC6933] A. Bierman, D. Romascanu, J. Quittek and M. Chandramouli " Entity MIB (Version 4)", RFC 6933, May 2013.
- [ACPI] "Advanced Configuration and Power Interface Specification",<http://www.acpi.info/DOWNLOADS/ACPIspec30b.pdf>
- [DMTF] "Power State Management Profile DMTF DSP1027 Version 2.0" December 2009
http://www.dmtf.org/sites/default/files/standards/documents/DSP1027_2.0.0.pdf
- [IEEE1621] "Standard for User Interface Elements in Power Control of Electronic Devices Employed in Office/Consumer Environments", IEEE 1621, December 2004.
- [IEC.61850-7-4] International Electrotechnical Commission, "Communication networks and systems for power utility automation Part 7-4: Basic communication structure Compatible logical node classes and data object classes", 2010.
- [IEC.62053-21] International Electrotechnical Commission, "Electricity metering equipment (a.c.) Particular requirements Part 22: Static meters for active energy (classes 1 and 2)", 2003.
- [IEC.62053-22]International Electrotechnical Commission, "Electricity metering equipment (a.c.) Particular

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
requirements Part 22: Static meters for active energy
(classes 0,2 S and 0,5 S)", 2003.

Authors' Addresses

Mouli Chandramouli
Cisco Systems, Inc.
Sarjapur Outer Ring Road
Bangalore 560103
IN

Phone: +91 80 4429 2409
Email: moulchan@cisco.com

Brad Schoening
44 Rivers Edge Drive
Little Silver, NJ 07739
US
Email: brad.schoening@verizon.net

Juergen Quittek
NEC Europe Ltd.
NEC Laboratories Europe
Network Research Division
Kurfuersten-Anlage 36
Heidelberg 69115
DE

Phone: +49 6221 4342-115
Email: quittek@neclab.eu

Thomas Dietz
NEC Europe Ltd.
NEC Laboratories Europe
Network Research Division
Kurfuersten-Anlage 36
Heidelberg 69115
DE

Phone: +49 6221 4342-128
Email: Thomas.Dietz@neclab.eu

Internet-Draft <Power and Energy Monitoring MIB> July 2013
Benoit Claise
Cisco Systems, Inc.
De Kleetlaan 6a b1
Diegem 1813
BE

Phone: +32 2 704 5622
Email: bclaise@cisco.com

Network Working Group
Internet-Draft
Intended Status: Informational
Expires: July 12, 2013

B. Claise
J. Parello
Cisco Systems, Inc.
B. Schoening
Independent Consultant
J. Quittek
NEC Europe Ltd

July 9, 2013

Energy Management Framework
draft-ietf-eman-framework-08

Status of this Memo

This Internet-Draft is submitted to IETF in full conformance with the provisions of BCP 78 and BCP 79.

Internet-Drafts are working documents of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), its areas, and its working groups. Note that other groups may also distribute working documents as Internet-Drafts.

Internet-Drafts are draft documents valid for a maximum of six months and may be updated, replaced, or obsoleted by other documents at any time. It is inappropriate to use Internet-Drafts as reference material or to cite them other than as "work in progress."

The list of current Internet-Drafts can be accessed at <http://www.ietf.org/ietf/lid-abstracts.txt>

The list of Internet-Draft Shadow Directories can be accessed at <http://www.ietf.org/shadow.html>

This Internet-Draft will expire on July, 2013.

<Claise, et. Al>

Expires Jul 12 2013

[Page 1]

Copyright Notice

Copyright (c) 2013 IETF Trust and the persons identified as the document authors. All rights reserved.

This document is subject to BCP 78 and the IETF Trust's Legal Provisions Relating to IETF Documents (<http://trustee.ietf.org/license-info>) in effect on the date of publication of this document. Please review these documents carefully, as they describe your rights and restrictions with respect to this document. Code Components extracted from this document must include Simplified BSD License text as described in Section 4.e of the Trust Legal Provisions and are provided without warranty as described in the Simplified BSD License.

Abstract

This document defines a framework for providing Energy Management for devices and device components within or connected to communication networks. The framework defines an Energy Management Domain as a set of Energy Objects. Each Energy Object is identified, classified and given context. Energy Objects can be monitored and controlled with respect to Power, Power State, Energy, Demand, Power Attributes, and Battery. Additionally the framework models relationships and capabilities between Energy Objects.

<Claise, et. Al>

Expires August, 2013

[Page 2]

Table of Contents

1. Introduction	5
1.1. Energy Management Documents Overview	6
2. Terminology	6
Device.....	7
Component.....	7
Energy Management.....	7
Energy Management System (EnMS).....	7
Power.....	9
Demand.....	9
Power Attributes.....	9
Power Quality.....	9
Electrical Equipment.....	10
Non-Electrical Equipment (Mechanical Equipment).....	10
Energy Object.....	10
Energy Monitoring.....	10
Energy Control.....	11
Provide Energy.....	11
Receive Energy.....	11
Power Interface.....	11
Energy Management Domain.....	11
Energy Object Identification.....	12
Energy Object Context.....	12
Energy Object Relationship.....	12
Aggregation Relationship.....	12
Metering Relationship.....	12
Power Source Relationship.....	13
Power State.....	13
Power State Set.....	13
Nameplate Power.....	13
3. Concerns Specific to Energy Management	13
3.1. Concern #1: Power Supply	15
3.2. Concern #2: Power and Energy Measurement	20
3.3. Concern #3: Reporting Sleep and Off States	21
3.4. Concern #4: Devices and Components	22
3.5. Concern #5: Non-Electrical Equipment	22
3.6. Concern #6: Energy Procurement	23
4. Energy Management Abstraction	24
4.1 Conceptual Model.....	24
4.2 Energy Object.....	25
4.3 Energy Object Attributes.....	25
4.4 Measurements.....	28
4.5 Control.....	31
4.6 Power State Sets Comparison.....	37
4.7 Relationships.....	38
4.8 Relationship Conventions and Guidelines.....	38

4.9 Energy Object Relationship Extensions.....	41
5. Energy Management Information Model.....	41
6. Example Topologies.....	46
6.1 Example I: Simple Device with one Source.....	47
6.2 Example II: Multiple Inlets.....	48
6.3 Example III: Multiple Sources.....	48
6.4 Relationships Between Devices.....	49
7. Relationship with Other Standards	54
8. Security Considerations	55
9. IANA Considerations	56
9.1 IANA Registration of new Power State Set.....	56
9.2 Updating the Registration.....	58
10. Acknowledgments	59
11. References	59
Normative References.....	59
Informative References.....	59

OPEN ISSUES:

- Are Tracked via Issue Tracker. See
<https://trac.tools.ietf.org/wg/eman/trac/report/1>

<Claise, et. Al>

Expires August, 2013

[Page 4]

1. Introduction

Network management is often divided into the five main areas defined in the ISO Telecommunications Management Network model: Fault, Configuration, Accounting, Performance, and Security Management (FCAPS) [X.700]. Not covered by this traditional management model is Energy Management, which is rapidly becoming a critical area of concern worldwide, as seen in [ISO50001].

This document defines an energy management framework for devices within or connected to communication networks. The devices, or components of these devices (such as router line cards, fans, disks), can then be monitored and controlled. Monitoring includes power, energy, demand, and attributes of power. Energy control can be performed by setting devices' or components' power state. If a device contains batteries, these can also be monitored and controlled.

This framework further describes how to identify, classify and provide context for such devices. While the context information is not specific to Energy Management, some context attributes are specified in the framework, addressing the following use cases: how important is a device in terms of its business impact, how should devices be grouped for reporting and searching, and how should a device role be described. These context attributes help in fault management and impact analysis while controlling the power states. Guidelines for using context for energy management are described.

The framework introduces the concept of a power interface that is analogous to a network interface. A power interface is defined as an interconnection among devices where energy can be provided, received, or both.

The most basic example of Energy Management is a single device reporting information about itself. In many cases, however, energy is not measured by the device itself, but metered upstream in the power distribution tree. For example, a power

distribution unit (PDU) may measure the energy it supplies to attached devices and report this to an energy management system. Therefore, devices often have relationships to other devices or components in the power network. An EnMS generally requires an understanding of the power topology (who provides power to whom), the metering topology (who meters whom), and

an understanding of the potential aggregation (does a meter aggregate values from other devices).

The relationships build on the power interface concept. The different relationships among devices and components, specified in this document, include: power source relationship, metering relationship, and aggregation relationship.

1.1. Energy Management Documents Overview

The EMAN standard provides a set of specifications for Energy Management. This document specifies the framework, per the Energy Management requirements specified in [EMAN-REQ].

The applicability statement document [EMAN-AS] includes use cases, a cross-reference between existing standards and the EMAN standard, and a description of this frameworks relationship to other frameworks.

The Energy Object Context MIB [EMAN-OBJECT-MIB] specifies objects for addressing Energy Object Identification, classification, context information, and relationships from the point of view of Energy Management.

The Power and Energy Monitoring MIB [EMAN-MON-MIB] specifies objects for monitoring of Power, Energy, Demand, Power Attributes, and Power States.

The Battery Monitoring MIB [EMAN-BATTERY-MIB] defines managed objects that provide information on the status of batteries in managed devices.

2. Terminology

The key words "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHALL", "SHALL NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" in this document are to be interpreted as described in RFC 2119 [RFC2119].

Some terms have a NOTE that is not part of the definition itself, but accounts for differences between terminologies of different standards organizations or further clarifies the definition.

Device

A piece of electrical or non-electrical equipment.

Reference: Adapted from [IEEE100]

Component

A part of an electrical or non-electrical equipment (Device).

Reference: Adapted from [ITU-T-M-3400]

Energy Management

Energy Management is a set of functions for measuring, modeling, planning, and optimizing networks to ensure that the network and network attached devices use energy efficiently and appropriately for the nature of the application and the cost constraints of the organization.

Reference: Adapted from [ITU-T-M-3400]

NOTES:

1. Energy management refers to the activities, methods, procedures and tools that pertain to

measuring, modeling, planning, controlling and optimizing the use of energy in networked systems [NMF].

2. Energy Management is a management domain which is congruent to any of the FCAPS areas of management in the ISO/OSI Network Management Model [TMN]. Energy Management for communication networks and attached devices is a subset or part of an organization's greater Energy Management Policies.

Energy Management System (EnMS)

An Energy Management System is a combination of hardware and software used to administer a network with the primary purpose of energy management.

Reference: Adapted from [1037C]

NOTES:

1. An Energy Management System according to [ISO50001] (ISO-EnMS) is a set of systems or procedures upon which organizations can develop and implement an energy policy, set targets, action plans and take into account legal requirements related to energy use. An ISO-EnMS allows organizations to improve energy performance and demonstrate conformity to requirements, standards, and/or legal requirements.
2. Example ISO-EnMS: Company A defines a set of policies and procedures indicating there should exist multiple computerized systems that will poll energy from their meters and pricing / source data from their local utility. Company A specifies that their CFO should collect information and summarize it quarterly to be sent to an accounting firm to produce carbon accounting reporting as required by their local government.
3. For the purposes of EMAN, the definition from

[1037C] is the preferred meaning of an Energy Management System (EnMS). The definition from [ISO50001] can be referred to as ISO Energy Management System (ISO-EnMS).

Energy

That which does work or is capable of doing work. As used by electric utilities, it is generally a reference to electrical energy and is measured in kilowatt hours (kWh).

Reference: [IEEE100]

NOTES

1. Energy is the capacity of a system to produce external activity or perform work [ISO50001]

Power

The time rate at which energy is emitted, transferred, or received; usually expressed in watts (joules per second).
Reference: [IEEE100]

Demand

The average value of power or a related quantity over a specified interval of time. Note: Demand is expressed in kilowatts, kilovolt-amperes, kilovars, or other suitable units.
Reference: [IEEE100]

NOTES:

1. For EMAN we use kilowatts.

Power Attributes

Measurements of the electrical current, voltage, phase and

frequencies at a given point in an electrical power system.

Reference: Adapted from [IEC60050]

NOTES:

1. Power Attributes are not intended to be judgmental with respect to a reference or technical value and are independent of any usage context.

Power Quality

Characteristics of the electrical current, voltage, phase and frequencies at a given point in an electric power system, evaluated against a set of reference technical parameters. These parameters might, in some cases, relate to the compatibility between electricity supplied in an electric power system and the loads connected to that electric power system.

Reference: [IEC60050]

NOTES:

1. Electrical characteristics representing power quality information are typically required by customer facility energy management systems. It is not intended to satisfy the detailed requirements of power quality monitoring. Standards typically also give ranges of allowed values; the information attributes are the raw measurements, not the "yes/no" determination by the various standards.

Reference: [ASHRAE-201]

Electrical Equipment

A general term including materials, fittings, devices, appliances, fixtures, apparatus, machines, etc., used as a part of, or in connection with, an electric installation.

Reference: [IEEE100]

Non-Electrical Equipment (Mechanical Equipment)

A general term including materials, fittings, devices appliances, fixtures, apparatus, machines, etc., used as a part of, or in connection with, non-electrical power installations.

Reference: Adapted from [IEEE100]

Energy Object

An Energy Object (EO) is an information model (class) that represents a piece of equipment that is part of, or attached to, a communications network which is monitored, controlled, or aids in the management of another device for Energy Management.

Energy Monitoring

Energy Monitoring is a part of Energy Management that deals with collecting or reading information from Energy Objects to aid in Energy Management.

Energy Control

Energy Control is a part of Energy Management that deals with directing influence over Energy Objects.

Provide Energy

An Energy Object "provides" energy to another Energy Object if there is an energy flow from this Energy Object to the other one.

Receive Energy

An Energy Object "receives" energy from another Energy Object if there is an energy flow from the other Energy Object to this one.

Power Interface

A Power Interface (or simply interface) is an information model (class) that represents the interconnections among devices or components where energy can be provided, received, or both.

Power Inlet

A Power Inlet (or simply inlet) is an interface at which a device or component receives energy from another device or component.

Power Outlet

A Power Outlet (or simply outlet) is an interface at which a device or component provides energy to another device or component.

Energy Management Domain

An Energy Management Domain is a set of Energy Objects that is considered one unit of management.

Energy Object Identification

Energy Object Identification is a set of attributes that enable an Energy Object to be universally unique or linked to other systems.

Energy Object Context

Energy Object Context is a set of attributes that allow an Energy Management System to classify an Energy Object within an organization.

Energy Object Relationship

An Energy Object Relationship is an association among Energy Objects.

NOTES

1. Relationships can be named and could include Aggregation, Metering, and Power Source.

Reference: Adapted from [CHEN]

Aggregation Relationship

An Aggregation Relationship is an Energy Object Relationship where one Energy Object aggregates Energy Management information of one or more other Energy Objects. The aggregating Energy Object has an Aggregation Relationship with each of the other Energy Objects.

Metering Relationship

A Metering Relationship is an Energy Object Relationship where one Energy Object measures power, energy, demand or power attributes of one or more other Energy Objects. The measuring Energy Object has a Metering Relationship with each of the measured objects.

Power Source Relationship

A Power Source Relationship is an Energy Object Relationship where one Energy Object provides power to one or more Energy Objects. These Energy Objects are referred

to as having a Power Source Relationship.

Power State

A Power State is a condition or mode of a device that broadly characterizes its capabilities, power consumption, and responsiveness to input.

Reference: Adapted from [IEEE1621]

Power State Set

A Power State Set is a collection of Power States that comprises a named or logical control grouping.

Nameplate Power

The Nameplate Power is the nominal Power of a device as specified by the device manufacturer.

3. Concerns Specific to Energy Management

With Energy Management, there exists a wide variety of devices that may be contained in the same deployments as a communication network but comprise a separate facility, home, or power distribution network.

Target devices for Energy Management are all Energy Objects that can be monitored or controlled (directly or indirectly) by an Energy Management System (EnMS) using the Internet protocol. These target devices include:

- Simple electrical appliances and fixtures
- Hosts, such as a PC, a server, or a printer
- Switches, routers, base stations, and other network equipment and middle boxes
- Components within devices, such as a battery inside a PC, a line card inside a switch, etc.

- Power over Ethernet (PoE) endpoints
- Power Distribution Units (PDU)
- Protocol gateway devices for Building Management Systems (BMS)
- Electrical meters
- Sensor controllers with subtended sensors

There may also exist varying protocols deployed among these power distribution and communication networks.

An Energy Management framework should also apply to these types of separate networks as they connect to and interact with a communications network.

This section explains special issues of Energy Management concerning power supply, Power and Energy metering, and the reporting of Power States.

Energy Management has special challenges because a power distribution network supplies energy to devices and components, while a separate communications network monitors and controls the power distribution network.

To illustrate this point, consider the basic scenario where a single powered device receives Energy and reports energy-related information about itself to an Energy Management System (EnMS) (see Figure 1).

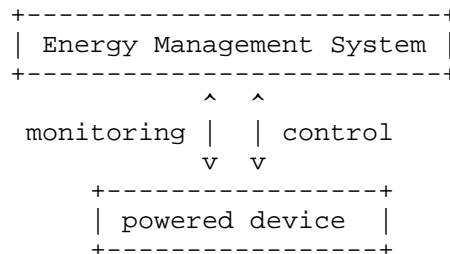


Figure 1: Basic energy management scenario

The powered device may have local energy control mechanisms, such as putting itself into a sleep mode when appropriate, and it may receive energy control commands for similar purposes from the EnMS. Information reported from a powered device to the EnMS includes at least the Power State of the powered device (on, sleep, off, etc.).

This and similar cases are well understood and common in Energy Management. They can be handled with well-established and standardized management procedures. The only missing components today are standardized information and data models for reporting and configuration, such as energy-specific MIB modules [RFC2578] and YANG modules [RFC6020].

Energy Management presents no new issues for fault, configuration, performance or security management. We can re-use standard network management procedures to handle these issues in an EnMS. For example, with faults we can re-use rmon or SNMP traps. For security, existing means like SNMPv3 security can be used.

But when there are issues specific to Energy Management then this framework adds them. The following subsections address these issues and illustrate them by extending the basic scenario in Figure 1.

3.1. Concern #1: Power Supply

Most powered devices that are managed by an EnMS receive external power.

While many devices receive Power from unmanaged supply systems, the number of manageable power supply devices is increasing.

In datacenters, for example, many Power Distribution Units (PDUs) allow the EnMS to switch power individually for each socket and also to measure the provided Power. This is very different from many other network management tasks. In this and similar cases, switching the power supply for a powered device or monitoring its power is not done by communicating with the actual powered device itself, but with an external device (in this case, the PDU).

Consequently, a standard for Energy Management must not only cover the powered devices that provide services for users, but also the power supply devices (which are themselves powered devices) that monitor or control the power supply for other powered devices.

A simple device such as a light bulb can be switched on or off only by switching its power supply. More complex devices may have the ability to switch off themselves or to bring

themselves to states in which they consume very little power. For these devices as well, it is desirable to monitor and control their power supply.

This extends the basic scenario from Figure 1 by adding a power supply device (see Figure 2).

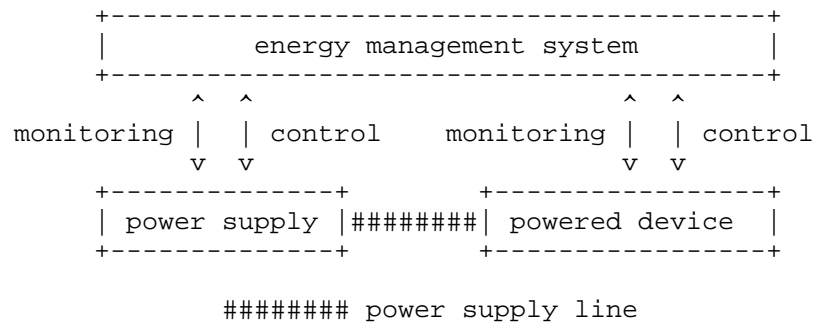


Figure 2: Basic Scenario with Power Supply Device

The power supply device can be as simple as a plain power switch. It may offer interfaces to the EnMS to monitor and to control the status of its power outlets, as with PDUs and Power over Ethernet (PoE) [IEEE-802.3at] switches.

The relationship between supply devices and the powered devices they serve creates several problems for managing power supply:

- o Identification of corresponding devices:
 - * A given powered device may need to identify the device supplying power.
 - * A given power supply device may need to identify the corresponding power-supplied device(s).
- o Aggregation of monitoring and control for multiple powered devices:
 - * A power supply device may supply multiple devices from a single power supply line.
- o Coordination of power control for devices with multiple power inlets:
 - * A powered device may receive power via multiple power lines controlled by the same or different power supply devices.

3.1.1 Identification of Power Supply and Powered Devices

When a power supply device controls or monitors power supply at one of its power outlets, the effect on other devices is not always clear without knowledge about wiring of power lines. The same holds for monitoring. The power supplying device can report that a particular socket is powered, and it may even be able to measure power and conclude that there is a consumer drawing power at that socket, but it may not know which powered device(s) receives the provided power.

In many cases it is obvious which other device is supplied by a certain outlet, but this always requires additional (reliable) information about power line wiring. Without knowing which device(s) are powered via a certain outlet, monitoring data are of limited value and the consequences of switching power on or off may be hard to predict.

Even in well-organized operations, powered devices' power cords can be plugged into the wrong socket, or wiring plans changed without updating the EnMS accordingly.

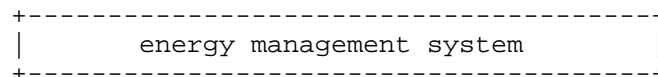
For reliable monitoring and control of power supply devices, additional information is needed to identify the device(s) that receive power provided at a particular monitored and controlled socket.

This problem also occurs in the opposite direction. If power supply control or monitoring for a certain device is needed, then the supplying power supply device has to be identified.

To conduct Energy Management tasks for both power supply devices and other powered devices, sufficiently unique identities are needed, and knowledge of their power supply relationship is required.

3.1.2 Multiple Devices Supplied by a Single Power Line

The second fundamental problem is the aggregation of monitoring and control that occurs when multiple powered devices are supplied by a single power supply line. It is often necessary for the EnMS to discover the full list of powered devices connected to a power supply line, as in Figure 3.



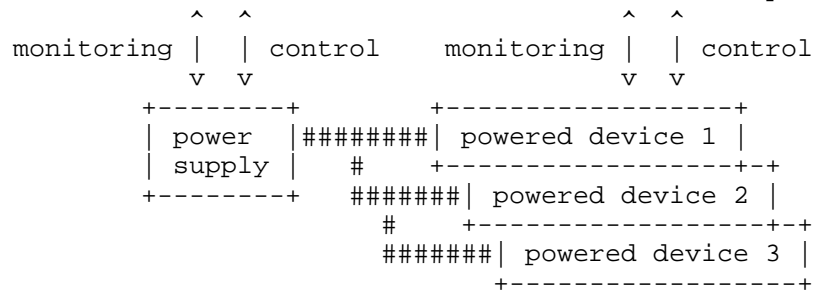


Figure 3: Multiple Powered Devices Supplied
by Single Power Line

With this list, the single status value has a clear meaning and is the sum of all powered devices. Control functions are limited by the fact that supply for the concerned devices can only be switched on or off for all of them at once. Individual control at the supply is not possible.

If the full list of devices powered by a single supply line is not known by the controlling power supply device, then control of power supply is problematic, because the complete consequences of a control action cannot be known.

3.1.3 Multiple Power Supply for a Single Powered Device

The third problem arises from the fact that there are devices with multiple power supplies. Some have this for redundancy of power supply, some for redundancy of internal power converters (for example, from AC mains power to DC internal power), and some because the capacity of a single supply line is insufficient.

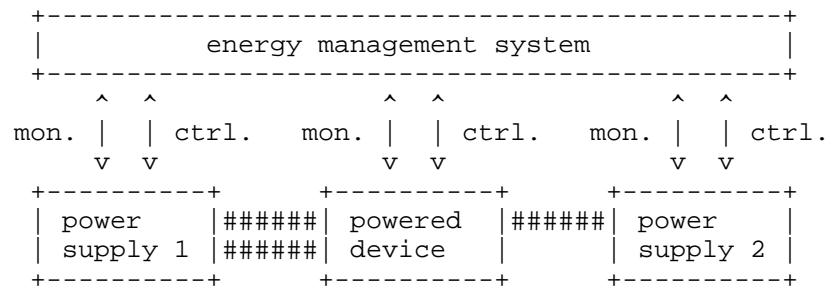


Figure 4: Multiple Power Supply for Single Powered Device

The example in Figure 4 does not necessarily show a real world scenario, but it shows the two cases to consider:

- o Multiple power supply lines between a single power supply device and a powered device
- o Different power supply devices supplying a single powered device

In any such case, there may be a need to identify the supplying power supply device individually for each power inlet of a powered device.

Without this information, monitoring and control of power supply for the powered device may be limited.

3.1.4 Bidirectional Power Interfaces

Some power technologies (mostly low power DC) allow power to be delivered bi-directionally. For example, energy stored in batteries on one device can be delivered back to a power hub, which redirects the power to another device. In this situation, the interface can function as both an inlet and outlet at different times.

A Power Interface can model a power inlet or a power outlet, depending on the conditions. Information of interest for Power Interfaces includes the power direction, as well as the energy received, provided, and the net result.

3.1.5 Relevance of Power Supply Concerns

In some scenarios, the problems with power supply do not exist or can be solved sufficiently. With Power over Ethernet (PoE) [IEEE-802.3at], there is always a one-to-one relationship between a Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) and a Powered Device (PD). Also, the Ethernet link on the line used for powering can be used to identify the PD and in many cases also the PSE.

For supply of AC mains power, the three problems described above cannot be solved in general. There is no commonly available protocol or automatic mechanism for identifying endpoints of a power line.

In addition, AC power lines support supplying multiple powered devices with a single line, and are commonly used in this fashion.

3.1.6 Remote Power Supply Control

There are three ways for an energy management system to change the Power State of powered devices. First is for the EnMS to provide policy or other useful information (like the electricity price) to the powered device for it to use in determining its Power State. The second is sending the powered device a command to switch to another Power State. The third is to use an upstream (to the powered device) device that can switch on and off power at its outlet.

Some devices cannot receive commands or change their Power State by themselves. Such Energy Objects may be controlled by switching on and off their power supply, and so have a particular need for the third method.

In Figure 4, the power supply can switch power at its power outlet and thereby switch on and off power for the connected powered device.

3.2. Concern #2: Power and Energy Measurement

Some devices include hardware to directly measure their Power and Energy consumption. However, most common networked devices do not provide an interface that gives access to Energy and Power measurements. Hardware instrumentation for this kind of measurement is typically not in place and adding it incurs an additional cost.

With the increasing cost of Energy and the growing importance of Energy Monitoring, it is likely that more devices in future will include instrumentation for power and energy measurements. It is also likely that it will take a long time for this to become commonplace.

3.2.1 Local Estimates

One solution to this problem is for the powered device to estimate its own Power and consumed Energy. For many Energy Management tasks, getting an estimate is much better than not

getting any information at all. Estimates can be based on actual measured activity level of a device or it can just depend on the power state (on, sleep, off, etc.).

An advantage of estimates is that they can be realized locally and with much lower cost than hardware instrumentation. Local estimates can be dealt with in traditional ways. They don't need an extension of the basic scenarios above. However, the powered device needs an energy model of itself to make estimates.

3.2.2 Management System Estimates

Another approach to the lack of instrumentation is estimation by the EnMS. The EnMS can estimate Power based on basic information on the powered device, such as the type of device, or its brand/model and functional characteristics.

Energy estimates can combine the typical power level by Power State with reported data about the Power State.

If the EnMS has a detailed energy model of the device, it can produce better estimates, including the actual power state and actual activity level of the device. This information can be obtained by monitoring the device with conventional means of performance monitoring.

3.3. Concern #3: Reporting Sleep and Off States

Low-power states pose special challenges for energy reporting because they may preclude a device from listening to and responding to network requests. Devices may still be able to reliably track energy use in these states, as power levels are usually static and internal clocks can track elapsed time in these states.

Some devices have out-of-band or proxy abilities to respond to network requests in low-power states. Others could use proxy abilities in an energy management protocol to improve this reporting, particularly if the powered device sends out notifications of power state changes.

3.4. Concern #4: Devices and Components

While the typical focus of energy management is entire powered devices, sometimes it is desirable to manage individual components of devices, such as line cards, fans, disks, etc.

This framework uses a much simpler model for components than for entire devices. The concept of Power Interfaces is not used between a device and its contained components. Reporting of energy-related quantities for individual components is limited to the most important ones. Simplifications for components in this framework include

- o identifying components like devices but without distinct context information,
- o reporting a containment relationship to the containing device,
- o inheriting all context information from the containing device,
- o not modeling power interfaces and power lines between a component and its containing device or other components, and
- o only reporting real power and energy values for components.

Power state monitoring and control are not simplified. These have the same functionality for devices and components. In rare cases where there is a need to model components of a device in more detail, components of a device can be modeled as individual devices. Then all considerations for devices also apply to these components. This model has a higher overhead and should be used only when needed. If used, it is not necessarily visible whether a set of components belongs to a single device or not, but for energy management purposes this might not be of high relevance.

3.5. Concern #5: Non-Electrical Equipment

The primary focus of this framework is the management of Electrical Equipment. Some Non-Electrical Equipment may be connected to communication networks and could have their energy managed if normalized to the electrical units for power and energy.

Some examples of Non-Electrical Equipment that may be connected to a communication network are:

- 1) A controller for compressed air. The controller is electrical only for its network connection. The controller is fueled by natural gas and produces compressed air. The energy transferred via compressed air is distributed to devices on a factory floor via a Power Interface which consists of tools (drills, screwdrivers, assembly line conveyor belts). The energy measured is non-electrical (compressed air).
- 2) A controller for steam. The controller is electrical for its network attachment but it burns tallow and produces steam to subtended boilers. The energy is non-electrical (steam).
- 3) A controller or regulator for gas. The controller is electrical for its network attachment but it has physical non-electrical components for control. The energy is non-electrical (BTU).

3.6. Concern #6: Energy Procurement

While an EnMS may be a central point for corporate reporting, cost, environmental impact, and regulatory compliance, Energy Management in this framework excludes Energy procurement and the environmental impact of energy use. As such the framework does not include:

- Cost in currency or environmental units of manufacturing an Energy Object
- Embedded carbon or environmental equivalences of an Energy Object
- Cost in currency or environmental impact to dismantle or recycle an Energy Object
- Supply chain analysis of energy sources for Energy Object deployment
- Conversion of the usage or production of energy to units expressed from the source of that energy (such as the greenhouse gas emissions associated with 1000kW from a diesel source)

4. Energy Management Abstraction

Network management is often divided into the five main areas defined in the ISO Telecommunications Management Network model: Fault, Configuration, Accounting, Performance, and Security Management (FCAPS) [X.700]. This traditional management model does not cover Energy Management.

This section describes a conceptual model of information that can be used for Energy Management. The classes and categories of attributes in the model are described with rationale for each. A UML description of the model can be found in Section 5.

4.1 Conceptual Model

To address Energy Management this specification describes an information model that can exist along with Network Management while addressing issues specific to Energy Management (Section 3).

An information model for Energy Management will need to describe a means to report information, provide control, and model the interconnections among physical entities.

Therefore, this section proposes a similar conceptual model for physical entities to that used in Network Management: devices, components, and interfaces. This section then defines the additional attributes specific to Energy Management for those entities that are not available in existing Network Management models.

For modeling the physical entities this section describes three classes: a Device, a Component, and a Power Interface. These classes are sub-types of an abstract Energy Object class.

For modeling the additional attributes, this section describes attributes of an Energy Object for: identification, classification, context, control, power and energy.

Since the interconnections between physical entities for Energy Management may have no relation to the interconnections for Network Management the Energy Object classes contain a separate Relationships class as an attribute to model these types of interconnections.

The remainder of this section describes the conceptual model of the classes and categories of attributes in the information model. The exact definitions of the classes and attributes are specified using UML in Section 5.

4.2 Energy Object

An Energy Object is an abstract class that contains the base attributes for Energy Management. There are three types of Energy Objects: Device, Component and Power Interface.

4.2.1 Device Class

The Device Class is a sub-class of Energy Object that represents a physical piece of equipment.

A Device Class instance may represent a device that is a consumer, producer, or meter of energy.

A Device Class instance may represent a physical device that contains other components.

4.2.2 Component Class

The Component Class is a sub-class of Energy Object that represents a part of a physical piece of equipment.

4.2.3 Power Interface Class

The power interface class is a sub-class of Energy Object that represents the interconnection among devices and components.

There are some similarities between Power Interfaces and network interfaces. A network interface can be set to different states, such as sending or receiving data on an attached line. Similarly, a Power Interface can be receiving or providing power.

Physically, a Power Interface instance can represent an AC power socket, an AC power cord attached to a device, or an 8P8C (RJ45) PoE socket, etc.

4.3 Energy Object Attributes

This section describes categories of attributes for an Energy Object. Section 5 contains the specific UML definitions of the modeled attribute.

4.3.1 Identification

A Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) [RFC4122] is used to uniquely and persistently identify an Energy Object. Ideally the UUID is used to distinguish the Energy Object within the EnMS.

Every Energy Object has an optional unique printable name. Possible naming conventions are: textual DNS name, MAC address of the device, interface ifName, or a text string uniquely identifying the Energy Object. As an example, in the case of IP phones, the Energy Object name can be the device's DNS name.

Additionally an alternate key is provided to allow an Energy Object to be optionally linked with models in different systems.

4.3.2 Context in General

In order to aid in reporting and in differentiation between Energy Objects, each Energy Object optionally contains information establishing its business, site, or organizational context within a deployment

4.3.3 Context: Importance

An Energy Object can provide an importance value in the range of 1 to 100 to help rank a device's use or relative value to the site. The importance range is from 1 (least important) to 100 (most important). The default importance value is 1.

For example: A typical office environment has several types of phones, which can be rated according to their business impact. A public desk phone has a lower importance (for example, 10) than a business-critical emergency phone (for example, 100). As another example: A company can consider that a PC and a phone for a customer-service engineer are more important than a PC and a phone for lobby use.

Although EnMS and administrators can establish their own ranking, the following example is a broad recommendation for commercial deployments [CISCO-EW]:

- . 90 to 100 Emergency response
- . 80 to 90 Executive or business-critical

- . 70 to 79 General or Average
- . 60 to 69 Staff or support
- . 40 to 59 Public or guest
- . 1 to 39 Decorative or hospitality

4.3.4 Context: Keywords

An Energy Object can provide a set of keywords. These keywords are a list of tags that can be used for grouping, summary reporting within or between Energy Management Domains, and for searching. All alphanumeric characters and symbols (other than a comma), such as #, (, \$, !, and &, are allowed. Potential examples are: IT, lobby, HumanResources, Accounting, StoreRoom, CustomerSpace, router, phone, floor2, or SoftwareLab. There is no default value for a keyword.

Multiple keywords can be assigned to a device. White spaces before and after the commas are excluded, as well as within a keyword itself. In such cases, commas separate the keywords and no spaces between keywords are allowed. For example, "HR,Bldg1,Private".

4.3.5 Context: Role

An Energy Object contains a "role description" string that indicates the purpose the Energy Object serves in the EnMS. This could be a string describing the context the device fulfills in deployment.

Administrators can define any naming scheme for the role of a device. As guidance, a two-word role that combines the service the device provides along with type can be used [IPENERGY].

Example types of devices: Router, Switch, Light, Phone, WorkStation, Server, Display, Kiosk, HVAC.

Example Services by Line of Business:

Line of Business	Service
------------------	---------

Finance Trader, Teller, Fulfillment

Manufacturing Assembly, Control, Shipping

Retail Advertising, Cashier

Support Helpdesk, Management

Medical Patient, Administration, Billing

Role as a two-word string: "Faculty Desktop", "Teller Phone",
"Shipping HVAC", "Advertising Display", "Helpdesk Kiosk",
"Administration Switch".

4.3.6 Context: Domain

An Energy Object contains a string to indicate membership in an Energy Management Domain. An Energy Management Domain can be any collection of devices in a deployment, but it is recommended to map 1:1 with a metered or sub-metered portion of the site.

In building management, a meter refers to the meter provided by the utility used for billing and measuring power to an entire building or unit within a building. A sub-meter refers to a customer- or user-installed meter that is not used by the utility to bill but is instead used to get readings from sub portions of a building.

A meter is a type Energy Object and any Energy Object can perform metering.

An Energy Object should be a member of a single Energy Management Domain therefore one field is provided. The Energy Management Domain may be configured on an Energy Object.

4.4 Measurements

An Energy Object contains attributes to describe power, energy and demand measurements.

For the purposes of this framework, energy will be limited to electrical energy in watt-hours. Other forms of Energy Objects that use or produce non-electrical energy may be modeled as an Energy Object but must provide information converted to and expressed in watt-hours.

An analogy for understanding power versus energy measurements can be made to speed and distance in automobiles. Just as a speedometer indicates the rate of change of distance (speed), a power meter indicates the rate of transfer of energy. The odometer in an automobile measures the cumulative distance traveled and an energy meter indicates the accumulated energy transferred.

Demand measurements are averages of power measurements over time. So using the same analogy to an automobile: measuring the average vehicle speed over multiple intervals of time for a given distance travelled, demand is the average device power over multiple time intervals for a given energy value.

4.4.1 Measurements: Power

Each Energy Object contains a Nameplate Power attribute that describes the nominal power as specified by the manufacturer.

Power Measurement. The EnMS can use the Nameplate Power for provisioning, capacity planning and (potentially) billing.

Each Energy Object will have information that describes present power information, along with how that measurement was obtained or derived (e.g., measured, estimated, or presumed).

A power measurement is be qualified with the units, magnitude and direction of power flow, and is be qualified as to the means by which the measurement was made (e.g., Root Mean Square versus Nameplate).

In addition, the Energy Object describes how it intends to measure power. This intention can be described as one of the following: consumer, producer, meter or distributir of power. Given the intent, the EnMS can summarize or analyze the measurement. For example, metered usage reported by a meter and consumption usage reported by a device connected to that meter will naturally measure the same usage. With the two measurements identified by intent, the EnMS can make a proper summarization.

Power measurement magnitude conforms to the IEC 61850 definition of unit multiplier for the SI (System International) units of measure. Measured values are represented in SI units obtained by $\text{BaseValue} * (10^{\text{Scale}})$. For example, if current power usage of an Energy Object is 3, it could be 3 W, 3 mW, 3 KW, or 3 MW, depending on the value of the scaling factor. 3W implies that the BaseValue is 3 and Scale = 0, whereas 3mW implies BaseValue = 3 and ScaleFactor = -3.

In addition to knowing the power and magnitude an Energy Object indicates how the measurement was obtained:

- Whether the measurements were made at the device itself or at a remote source.
- Description of the method that was used to measure the power and whether this method can distinguish actual or estimated values.

An EnMS can use this information to account for the accuracy and nature of the reading between different implementations.

4.4.2 Measurements: Power Attributes

Optionally, an Energy Object describes the Power measurements with Power Attribute information reflecting the electrical characteristics of the measurement. These Power Attributes adhere to the IEC 61850 7-2 standard for describing AC measurements.

4.4.3 Measurements: Energy

Optionally, an Energy Object that can report actual power readings will have energy attributes that provide the energy used, produced, and net energy in kWh. These values are energy measurements that accumulate the power readings. If energy values are returned, then the three measurements are provided along with a description of accuracy.

4.4.4 Measurements: Demand

Optionally, an Energy Object will provide demand information over time. Demand measurements can be provided when the Energy Object is capable of measuring actual power

An Energy Object can be controlled by setting it to a specific Power State. An Energy Object implements at least one set of Power States consisting of at least two states, an on state and an off state.

Each Energy Object should indicate the sets of Power States that it implements. Well known Power States / Sets are registered with IANA.

When a device is set to a particular Power State, it may be busy. The device will set the desired Power State and then update the actual Power State when it changes. There are then two Power State control variables: actual and requested.

There are many existing standards for and implementations of Power States. An Energy Object can support a mixed set of Power States defined in different standards. A basic example is given by the three Power States defined in IEEE1621 [IEEE1621]: on, off, and sleep. The DMTF [DMTF], ACPI [ACPI], and PWG define larger numbers of Power States.

The semantics of a power state are specified by

- a) the functionality provided by an Energy Object in this state,
- b) a limitation of the power that an Energy Object uses in this state,
- c) a combination of a) and b)

The semantics of a Power State should be clearly defined. Limitation (curtailment) of the power used by an Energy Object in a state is be specified by

- an absolute power value
- a percentage value of power relative to the energy object's nameplate power
- an indication of used power relative to another power state. For example: Specify that used power in state A is less than in state B.

For supporting Power State management an Energy Object provides statistics on Power States including the time an

Energy Object spent in a certain Power State and the number of times an Energy Object entered a power state.

When requesting an Energy Object to enter a Power State an indication of the Power State's name or number can be used. Optionally an absolute or percentage of Nameplate Power can be provided to allow the Energy Object to transition to a nearest or equivalent Power State.

4.5.1 Power State Sets

There are several standards and implementations of Power State Sets. An Energy Object can support one or multiple Power State Set implementation(s) concurrently.

There are currently three Power State Sets advocated:

IEEE1621(256) - [IEEE1621]

DMTF(512) - [DMTF]

EMAN(768) - [EMAN-MONITORING-MIB]

The respective specific states related to each Power State Set are specified in the following sections. The guidelines for addition of new Power State Sets are specified in the IANA Considerations Section.

4.5.2 IEEE1621 Power State Set

The IEEE1621 Power State Set [IEEE1621] consists of 3 rudimentary states: on, off or sleep.

on(0) - The device is fully On and all features of the device are in working mode.

off(1) - The device is mechanically switched off and does not consume energy.

sleep(2) - The device is in a power saving mode, and some features may not be available immediately.

4.5.3 DMTF Power State Set

DMTF [DMTF] standards organization has defined a power profile standard based on the CIM (Common Information Model) model that consists of 15 power states ON (2), SleepLight (3), SleepDeep (4), Off-Hard (5), Off-Soft (6), Hibernate(7), PowerCycle Off-Soft (8), PowerCycle Off-Hard (9), MasterBus reset (10), Diagnostic Interrupt (11), Off-Soft-Graceful (12), Off-Hard Graceful (13), MasterBus reset Graceful (14), PowerCycle Off-Soft Graceful (15), PowerCycle-Hard Graceful (16). DMTF standard is targeted for hosts and computers. Details of the semantics of each Power State within the DMTF Power State Set can be obtained from the DMTF Power State Management Profile specification [DMTF].

DMTF power profile extends ACPI power states. The following table provides a mapping between DMTF and ACPI Power State Set:

DMTF	ACPI
Power State	Power State
Reserved(0)	
Reserved(1)	
ON (2)	G0-S0
Sleep-Light (3)	G1-S1 G1-S2
Sleep-Deep (4)	G1-S3

Power Cycle (Off-Soft) (5)	G2-S5
----------------------------	-------

Off-hard (6)	G3
--------------	----

Hibernate (Off-Soft) (7)	G1-S4
--------------------------	-------

Off-Soft (8)	G2-S5
--------------	-------

Power Cycle (Off-Hard) (9)	G3
----------------------------	----

Master Bus Reset (10)	G2-S5
-----------------------	-------

Diagnostic Interrupt (11)	G2-S5
---------------------------	-------

Off-Soft Graceful (12)	G2-S5
------------------------	-------

Off-Hard Graceful (13)	G3
------------------------	----

MasterBus Reset Graceful (14)	G2-S5
-------------------------------	-------

Power Cycle off-soft Graceful (15)	G2-S5
------------------------------------	-------

Power Cycle off-hard Graceful (16)	G3
------------------------------------	----

4.5.4 EMAN Power State Set

An EMAN Power State Set represents an attempt at a standard approach for modeling the different levels of power of a device. The EMAN Power States are an expansion of the basic Power States as defined in [IEEE1621] that also incorporates the Power States defined in [ACPI] and [DMTF]. Therefore, in addition to the non-operational states as defined in [ACPI] and [DMTF] standards, several intermediate operational states have been defined.

An Energy Object may implement fewer or more Power States than a particular EMAN Power State Set specifies. In this case, the Energy Object implementation can determine its own mapping to the predefined EMAN Power States within the EMAN Power State Set.

There are twelve EMAN Power States that expand on [IEEE1621]. The expanded list of Power States is derived from [CISCO-EW] and is divided into six operational states and six non-operational states. The lowest non-operational state is 1 and the highest is 6. Each non-operational state corresponds to an [ACPI] Global and System state between G3 (hard-off) and G1 (sleeping). Each operational state represents a performance state, and may be mapped to [ACPI] states P0 (maximum performance power) through P5 (minimum performance and minimum power).

In each of the non-operational states (from mechoff(1) to ready(6)), the Power State preceding it is expected to have a lower Power value and a longer delay in returning to an operational state:

mechoff(1) : An off state where no Energy Object features are available. The Energy Object is unavailable. No energy is being consumed and the power connector can be removed.

softoff(2) : Similar to mechoff(1), but some components remain powered or receive trace power so that the Energy Object can be awakened from its off state. In softoff(2), no context is saved and the device typically requires a complete boot when awakened.

hibernate(3): No Energy Object features are available. The Energy Object may be awakened without requiring a complete boot, but the time for availability is longer than sleep(4). An example for state hibernate(3) is a save to-disk state where DRAM context is not maintained. Typically, energy consumption is zero or close to zero.

sleep(4) : No Energy Object features are available, except for out-of-band management, such as wake-up mechanisms. The time for availability is longer than standby(5). An example for state sleep(4) is a save-to-RAM state, where DRAM context is maintained. Typically, energy consumption is close to zero.

standby(5) : No Energy Object features are available, except for out-of-band management, such as wake-up mechanisms. This mode is analogous to cold-standby. The time for availability is longer than ready(6). For example processor context is may not be maintained. Typically, energy consumption is close to zero.

ready(6) : No Energy Object features are available, except for out-of-band management, such as wake-up mechanisms. This mode is analogous to hot-standby. The Energy Object can be quickly transitioned into an operational state. For example, processors are not executing, but processor context is maintained.

lowMinus(7) : Indicates some Energy Object features may not be available and the Energy Object has taken measures or selected options to provide less than low(8) usage.

low(8) : Indicates some features may not be available and the Energy Object has taken measures or selected options to provide less than mediumMinus(9) usage.

mediumMinus(9): Indicates all Energy Object features are available but the Energy Object has taken measures or selected options to provide less than medium(10) usage.

medium(10) : Indicates all Energy Object features are available but the Energy Object has taken measures or selected options to provide less than highMinus(11) usage.

highMinus(11): Indicates all Energy Object features are available and power usage is less than high(12).

Internet-Draft <EMAN Framework> February 2013
 high(12) : Indicates all Energy Object features
 are available and the Energy Object is consuming the highest
 power.

4.6 Power State Sets Comparison

A comparison of Power States from different Power State Sets can be seen in the following table:

IEEE1621	DMTF	ACPI	EMAN
Non-operational states			
off	Off-Hard	G3, S5	MechOff(1)
off	Off-Soft	G2, S5	SoftOff(2)
sleep	Hibernate	G1, S4	Hibernate(3)
sleep	Sleep-Deep	G1, S3	Sleep(4)
sleep	Sleep-Light	G1, S2	Standby(5)
sleep	Sleep-Light	G1, S1	Ready(6)
Operational states:			
on	on	G0, S0, P5	LowMinus(7)
on	on	G0, S0, P4	Low(8)
on	on	G0, S0, P3	MediumMinus(9)
on	on	G0, S0, P2	Medium(10)
on	on	G0, S0, P1	HighMinus(11)
on	on	G0, S0, P0	High(12)

Figure 6: Comparison of Power States

Two Energy Objects can establish an Energy Object Relationship.

Relationships are modeled with a Relationship class that contains the UUID of the participants in the relationship and a description of the type of relationship. The types of relationships are: power source, metering, and aggregations.

The Power Source Relationship gives a view of the wiring topology. For example: a data center server receiving power from two specific Power Interfaces from two different PDUs.

Note: A power source relationship may or may not change as the direction of power changes between two Energy Objects. The relationship may remain to indicate the change of power direction was unintended or an error condition.

The Metering Relationship gives the view of the metering topology. Standalone meters can be placed anywhere in a power distribution tree. For example, utility meters monitor and report accumulated power consumption of the entire building. Logically, the metering topology overlaps with the wiring topology, as meters are connected to the wiring topology. A typical example is meters that clamp onto the existing wiring.

The Aggregation Relationship gives a model of devices that may aggregate (sum, average, etc) values for other devices. The Aggregation Relationship is slightly different compared to the other relationships as this refers more to a management function.

In some situations, it is not possible to discover the Energy Object Relationships, and they must be set by an EnMS or administrator. Given that relationships can be assigned manually, the following sections describes guidelines for use.

4.8 Energy Object Relationship Conventions and Guidelines

This Energy Management framework does not impose many "MUST" rules related to Energy Object Relationships. There are always corner cases that could be excluded with too strict specifications of relationships. However, this Energy Management framework proposes a series of guidelines, indicated with "SHOULD" and "MAY".

4.8.1 Guidelines: Power Source

Power Source relationships are intended to identify the connections between Power Interfaces. This is analogous to a Layer 2 connection in networking devices (a "one-hop connection").

The preferred modeling would be for Power Interfaces to participate in Power Source Relationships.

It may happen that some Energy Objects may not have the capability to model Power Interfaces. Therefore, it may happen that a Power Source Relationship is established between two Energy Objects or two non-connected Power Interfaces.

While strictly speaking Components and Power Interfaces on the same device do provide or receive energy from each other, the Power Source relationship is intended to show energy transfer between Devices. Therefore the relationship is implied on the same Device.

- An Energy Object SHOULD NOT establish a Power Source Relationship with a Component.
- A Power Source Relationship SHOULD be established with next known Power Interface in the wiring topology.
 - o The next known Power Interface in the wiring topology would be the next device implementing the framework. In some cases the domain of devices under management may include some devices that do not implement the framework. In these cases, the Power Source relationship can be established with the next device in the topology that implements the framework and logically shows the Power Source of the device.
- Transitive Power Source relationships SHOULD NOT be established. For example, if an Energy Object A has a Power Source Relationship "Poweredby" with the Energy Object B, and if the Energy Object B has a Power Source Relationship "Poweredby" with the Energy Object C, then the Energy Object A SHOULD NOT have a Power Source Relationship "Poweredby" with the Energy Object C.

4.8.2 Guidelines: Metering Relationship

Metering Relationships are intended to show when one Device is measuring the power or energy at a point in a power distribution system. Since one point of a power distribution system may cover many Devices with a complex wiring topology, this relationship type can be seen as an arbitrary set.

Devices may include metering hardware for components and Power Interfaces or for the entire Device. For example, some PDUs may have the ability to measure Power for each Power Interface (metered by outlet). Others may be able to control power at each Power Interface but can only measure Power at the Power Inlet and a total for all Power Interfaces (metered by device).

In such cases a Device SHOULD be modeled as an Energy Object that meters all of its Power Outlets and each Power Outlet MAY be metered by the Energy Object representing the Device.

- A Metering Relationship MAY be established with any other Energy Object, Component, or Power Interface.
- Transitive Metering relationships MAY be used.
- When there is a series of meters for one Energy Object, the Energy Object MAY establish a Metering relationship with one or more of the meters.

4.8.3 Guidelines: Aggregation

Aggregation relationships are intended to identify when one device is used to accumulate values from other devices. Typically this is for energy or power values among devices and not for Components or Power Interfaces on the same device.

The intent of Aggregation relationships is to indicate when one device is providing aggregate values for a set of other devices when it is not obvious from the power source or simple containment within a device.

Establishing aggregation relationships within the same device would make modeling more complex and the aggregated values can be implied from the use of Power Inlets, outlet and Energy Object values on the same device.

Since an EnMS is naturally a point of aggregation it is not necessary to model aggregation for Energy Management Systems.

Aggregation SHOULD be used for power and energy. It MAY be used for aggregation of other values from the information model, but the rules and logical ability to aggregate each attribute is out of scope for this document.

- A Device SHOULD NOT establish an Aggregation Relationship with a Component.
- A Device SHOULD NOT establish an Aggregation Relationship with the Power Interfaces contained on the same device.
- A Device SHOULD NOT establish an Aggregation Relationship with an EnMS.
- Aggregators SHOULD log or provide notification in the case of errors or missing values while performing aggregation.

4.9 Energy Object Relationship Extensions

This framework for Energy Management is based on three relationship types: Aggregation , Metering, and Power Source.

This framework is defined with possible future extension of new Energy Object Relationships in mind. For example, a Power Distribution Unit (PDU) that allows physical entities like outlets to be "ganged" together as a logical entity for simplified management purposes, could be modeled with an extension called a "gang relationship", whose semantics would specify the Energy Objects' grouping.

5. Energy Management Information Model

The following basic UML represents an information model expression of the concepts in this framework. This information model, provided as a reference for implementers, is represented as a MIB in the different related IETF Energy Monitoring documents. However, other programming structures with different data models could be used as well.

Data modeling specifications of this information model may where needed specify which attributes are required or optional.

The notation use here is shorthand UML with lowercase types considered platform or atomic types (i.e., int, string, collection). Uppercase types denote classes described further. Collections and cardinality are expressed via qualifier notation. Attributes labeled static are considered class

Internet-Draft <EMAN Framework> February 2013
variables and global to the class. Arrows indicate
inheritance. Algorithms for class variable initialization,
constructors, or destructors are not shown. Attributes and
structures are considered readable and writeable unless
prefixed by a dash (-) that indicates read-only.

```
class EnergyObject {  
  
    // identification / classification  
    index      : int  
    identifier  : uuid  
    alternatekey : string  
  
    // context  
    domainName : string  
    role       : string  
    keywords [0..n] : string  
    importance  : int  
  
    // relationship  
  
    relationships [0..n] : Relationship  
  
    // measurements  
    nameplate      : Nameplate  
    power          : PowerMeasurement  
    energy         : EnergyMeasurment  
    demand         : DemandMeasurement  
  
    // control  
    powerControl [0..n] : PowerStateSet  
  
}  
  
class Device extends EnergyObject {  
    eocategory : enum { producer, consumer, meter,  
distributor }  
}  
  
class Component extends EnergyObject  
    eocategory : enum { producer, consumer, meter,  
distributor }  
}  
  
classInterface extends EnergyObject{  
    eoIfType : enum ( inlet, outlet, both}  
}
```

```
class Nameplate {
    nominalPower : PowerMeasurement
    details      : URI
}

class Relationship {
    relationshipType : enum { meters, meteredby, powers,
poweredby, aggregates, aggregatedby }
    relationshipObject : uuid
}

class Measurement {
    multiplier: enum { -24..24}
    caliber   : enum { actual, estimated, trusted, assumed }
    accuracy  : enum { 0..10000} // hundreds of percent
}

class PowerMeasurement extends Measurement {
    value      : long
    units      : "W"
    powerAttribute : PowerAttribute
}

class EnergyMeasurement extends Measurement {
    startTime : time
    units     : "kWh"
    provided  : long
    used      : long
    produced  : long
}

class TimedMeasurement extends Measurement {
    startTime : timestamp
    value     : Measurement
    maximum   : Measurement
}

class TimeInterval {
    value      : long
    units      : enum { seconds, milliseconds,...}
}
```

```
class DemandMeasurement extends Measurement {
    intervalLength : TimeInterval
    interval       : long
    intervalMode   : enum { periodic, sliding, total }
    intervalWindow : TimeInterval
    sampleRate     : TimeInterval
    status         : enum { active, inactive }
    measurements[0..n] : TimedMeasurements
}
```

```
class PowerStateSet {
    powerSetIdentifier : int
    name              : string
    powerStates [0..n] : PowerState
    operState        : int
    adminState       : int
    reason           : string
    configuredTime   : timestamp
}
```

```
class PowerState {
    powerStateIdentifier : int
    name                 : string
    cardinality          : int
    maximumPower         : PowerMeasurement
    totalTimeInState     : time
    entryCount           : long
}
```

```
class PowerAttribute {

    // container for attributes
    acQuality : ACQuality

}
```

```
class ACQuality {
    acConfiguration : enum {SNGL, DEL,WYE}
    avgVoltage      : long
    avgCurrent      : long
    frequency       : long
    unitMultiplier  : int
    accuracy        : int
    totalActivePower : long
}
```

```

Internet-Draft          <EMAN Framework>          February 2013
    totalReactivePower : long
    totalApparentPower : long
    totalPowerFactor : long
    phases [0..2] : ACPhase

    // Could have abstract class Phase to be clear it's ACPhase
    or one of the subclasses

}

class ACPhase {
    phaseIndex : long
    avgCurrent : long
    activePower : long
    reactivePower : long
    apparentPower : long
    powerFactor : long
}

class DelPhase extends ACPhase {
    phaseToNextPhaseVoltage : long
    thdVoltage : long
    thdCurrent : long
}

class WYEPhase extends ACPhase {
    phaseToNeutralVoltage : long
    thdCurrent : long
    thdVoltage : long
}

```

Figure 7: Information Model UML Representation

6. Example Topologies

In this section we give examples of how to use the Energy Management framework relationships to model topologies. In each example we show how it can be applied when Devices have the capability to model Power Interfaces. We also show in each example how the framework can be applied when devices cannot support Power Interfaces but only monitor information or control the Device as a whole. For instance, a PDU may only

be able to measure power and energy for the entire unit without the ability to distinguish among the inlets or outlet.

Together, these examples show how the framework can be adapted for Devices with different capabilities (typically hardware) for Energy Management.

Given for all Examples:

Device W: A computer with one power supply. Power interface 1 is an inlet for Device W.

Device X: A computer with two power supplies. Power interface 1 and power interface 2 are both inlets for Device X.

Device Y: A PDU with multiple Power Interfaces numbered 0..10. Power interface 0 is an inlet and power interface 1..10 are outlets.

Device Z: A PDU with multiple Power Interfaces numbered 0..10. Power interface 0 is an inlet and power interface 1..10 are outlets.

6.1 Example I: Simple Device with one Source

Topology:

Device W inlet 1 is plugged into Device Y outlet 8.

With Power Interfaces:

Device W has an Energy Object representing the computer itself as well as one Power Interface defined as an inlet.

Device Y would have an Energy Object representing the PDU itself (the Device), with a Power Interface 0 defined as an inlet and Power Interfaces 1..10 defined as outlets.

The interfaces of the devices would have a Power Source Relationship such that:

Device W inlet 1 is powered by Device Y outlet 8.

Without Power Interfaces:

Device W has an Energy Object representing the computer.

Device Y would have an Energy Object representing the PDU.

The devices would have a Power Source Relationship such that:

Device W is powered by Device Y.

6.2 Example II: Multiple Inlets

Topology:

Device X inlet 1 is plugged into Device Y outlet 8.

Device X inlet 2 is plugged into Device Y outlet 9.

With Power Interfaces:

Device X has an Energy Object representing the computer itself. It contains two Power Interfaces defined as inlets.

Device Y would have an Energy Object representing the PDU itself (the Device), with a Power Interface 0 defined as an inlet and Power Interfaces 1..10 defined as outlets.

The interfaces of the devices would have a Power Source Relationship such that:

Device X inlet 1 is powered by Device Y outlet 8.

Device X inlet 2 is powered by Device Y outlet 9.

Without Power Interfaces:

Device X has an Energy Object representing the computer.

Device Y has an Energy Object representing the PDU.

The devices would have a Power Source Relationship such that:

Device X is powered by Device Y.

6.3 Example III: Multiple Sources

Topology:

Device X inlet 1 is plugged into Device Y outlet 8.

Device X inlet 2 is plugged into Device Z outlet 9.

With Power Interfaces:

Device X has an Energy Object representing the computer itself. It contains two Power Interface defined as inlets.

Device Y would have an Energy Object representing the PDU itself (the Device), with a Power Interface 0 defined as an inlet and Power Interfaces 1..10 defined as outlets.

Device Z would have an Energy Object representing the PDU itself (the Device), with a Power Interface 0 defined as an inlet and Power Interfaces 1..10 defined as outlets.

The interfaces of the devices would have a Power Source Relationship such that:

Device X inlet 1 is powered by Device Y outlet 8.

Device X inlet 2 is powered by Device Z outlet 9.

Without Power Interfaces:

Device X has an Energy Object representing the computer. Device Y and Z would both have respective Energy Objects representing each entire PDU.

The devices would have a Power Source Relationship such that:

Device X is powered by Device Y and powered by Device Z.

6.4 Relationships Between Devices

6.4.1 Power Source Topology

As described in Section 4, the power source(s) of a device is important for energy management. The Energy Management reference model addresses this by a Power Source Relationship. This is a relationship among devices providing energy and devices receiving energy.

A simple example is a PoE PSE, such as an Ethernet switch providing power to a PoE PD, such as a desktop phone. Here the switch provides energy and the phone receives energy. This relationship can be seen in the figure below.

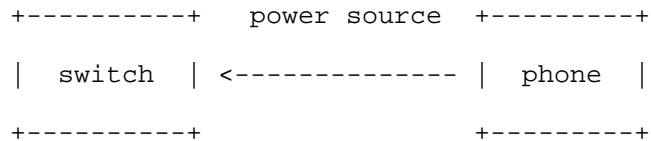


Figure 8: Simple Power Source

A single power provider can act as power source for multiple power receivers. An example is a power distribution unit (PDU) providing AC power for multiple switches.

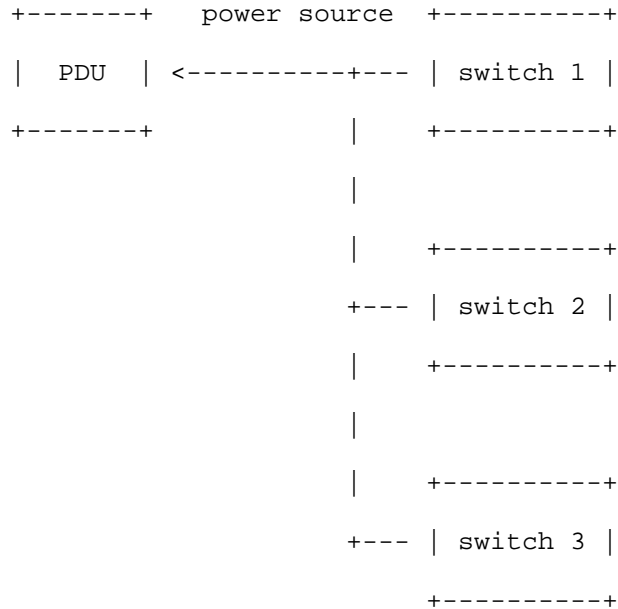


Figure 10: Multiple Power Source

This level of modeling is sufficient if there is no need to distinguish in monitoring and control between the individual receivers at the switch.

However, if there is a need to monitor or control power supply for individual receivers at the power provider, then a more detailed level of modeling is needed.

Devices receive or provide energy at power interfaces connecting them to a transmission medium. The Power Source relationship can be used between power interfaces at the power provider side as well as at the power receiver side. Figure 9 shows a power-providing device with one power interface (PI) per connected receiving device.

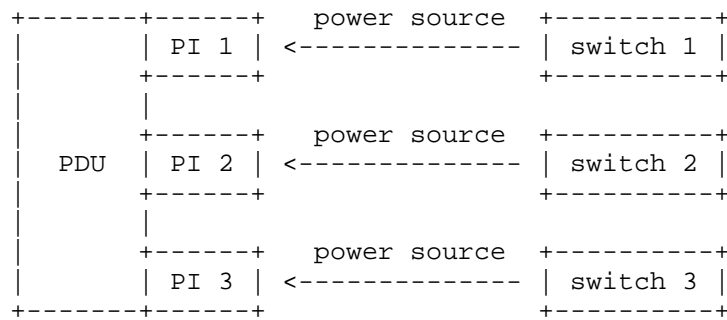


Figure 11: Power Source with Power interfaces

When required for consistency, Power interfaces may also be modeled at the receiving device, as shown in Figure 10.

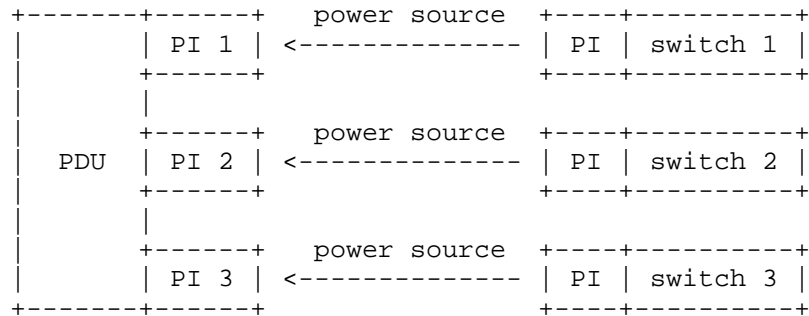


Figure 12: Power Interfaces at Receiving Device

Power Source relationships are between devices and their interfaces. They are not transitive. In the examples below there is a PDU powering a switch powering a phone.

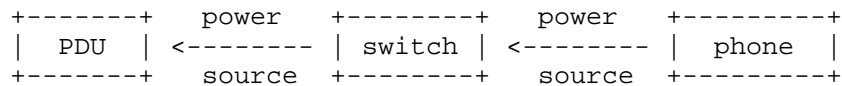


Figure 13: Power Source Non-Transitive

Power Source Relationships are between the PDU and the switch and between the switch and the phone. Transitively, there

exists a Power Source Relationship between the PDU and the phone. .

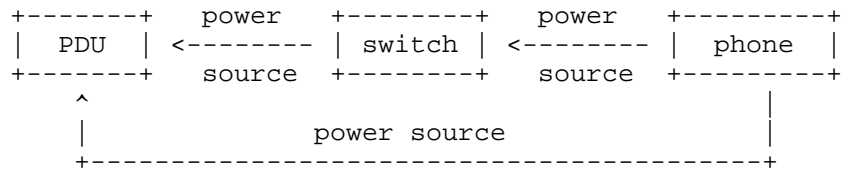


Figure 14: Power Source Transitive

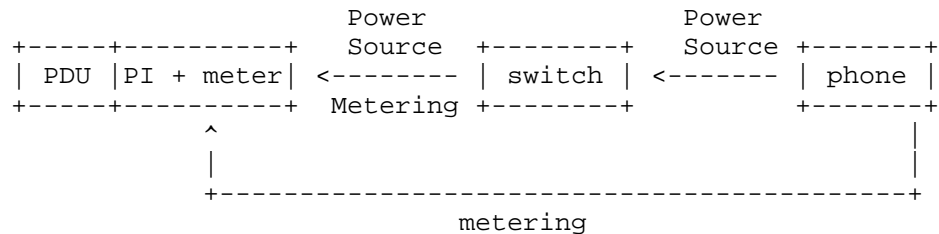
6.4.2 Metering Topology

Case 1: Metering between two devices

The metering topology between two devices is closely related to the power source topology. It is based on the assumption that in many cases the power provided and the power received is the same for both peers of a power source relationship. Then power measured at one end can be taken as the actual power value at the other end. Obviously, the same applies to energy at both ends.

We define in this case a Metering Relationship between two devices or power interfaces of devices that have a power source relationship. Power and energy values measured at one peer of the power source relationship are reported for the other peer as well.

The Metering Relationship is independent of the direction of the Power Source Relationship. The more common case is that values measured at the power provider are reported for the power receiver, but also the reverse case is possible with values measured at the power receiver being reported for the power provider.



Case 2: Metering at a point in power distribution

A Sub-meter in a power distribution system can logically measure the power or energy for all devices downstream from the meter in the power distribution system. As such, a Power metering relationship can be seen as a relationship between a meter and all of the devices downstream from the meter.

We define in this case a Power Source relationship between a metering device and devices downstream from the meter.

In cases where the Power Source topology cannot be discovered or derived from the information available in the Energy Management Domain, the Metering Topology can be used to relate the upstream meter to the downstream devices in the absence of specific power source relationships.

A Metering Relationship can occur between devices that are not directly connected, as shown in Figure 16.

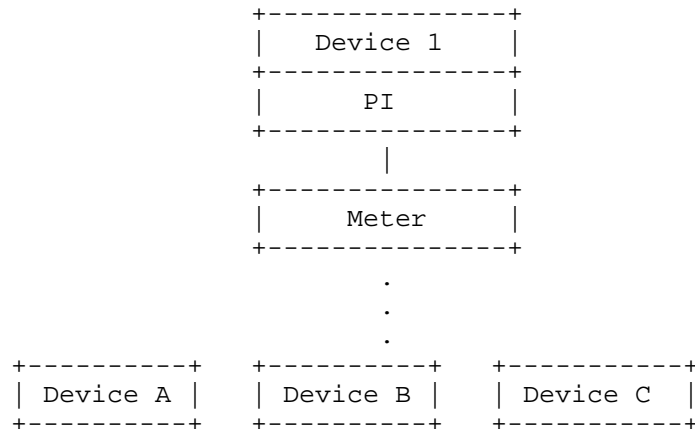


Figure 16: Complex Metering Topology

An analogy to communications networks would be modeling connections between servers (meters) and clients (devices) when the complete Layer 2 topology between the servers and clients is not known.

6.4.3 Aggregation Topology

Some devices can act as aggregation points for other devices. For example, a PDU controller device may contain the summation of power and energy readings for many PDU devices. The PDU controller will have aggregate values for power and energy for a group of PDU devices.

This aggregation is independent of the physical power or communication topology.

An Aggregation Relationship is an Energy Object Relationship where one Energy Object (called the Aggregate Energy Object) aggregates the Energy Management information of one or more other Energy Objects. These Energy Objects are said to have an Aggregation Relationship.

The functions that the aggregation point may perform include the calculation of values such as average, count, maximum, median, minimum, or the listing (collection) of the aggregation values, etc.

Based on the experience gained on aggregations at the IETF [draft-ietf-ipfix-a9n-08], the aggregation function in the EMAN framework is limited to the summation.

When aggregation occurs across a set of entities, values to be aggregated may be missing for some entities. The EMAN framework does not specify how these should be treated, as different implementations may have good reason to take different approaches. One common treatment is to define the aggregation as missing if any of the constituent elements are missing (useful to be most precise). Another is to treat the missing value as zero (useful to have continuous data streams).

The specifications of aggregation functions are out of scope of the EMAN framework, but must be clearly specified by the equipment vendor.

7. Relationship with Other Standards

This energy management framework uses, as much as possible, existing standards efforts, especially with respect to information modeling and data modeling [RFC3444].

The data model for power- and energy-related objects is based on IEC 61850.

Specific examples include:

The scaling factor, which represents Energy Object usage magnitude, conforms to the IEC 61850 definition of unit multiplier for the SI (System International) units of measure.

The electrical characteristic is based on the ANSI and IEC Standards, which require that we use an accuracy class for power measurement. ANSI and IEC define the following accuracy classes for power measurement:

IEC 62053-22 60044-1 class 0.1, 0.2, 0.5, 1 3.

ANSI C12.20 class 0.2, 0.5

The electrical characteristics and quality adhere closely to the IEC 61850 7-2 standard for describing AC measurements.

The power state definitions are based on the DMTF Power State Profile and ACPI models, with operational state extensions.

8. Security Considerations

Regarding the data attributes specified here, some or all may be considered sensitive or vulnerable in some network environments. Reading or writing these attributes without proper protection such as encryption or access authorization may have negative effects on the network capabilities.

Security Considerations for SNMP

Readable objects in MIB modules (i.e., objects with a MAX-ACCESS other than not-accessible) may be considered sensitive or vulnerable in some network environments. It is thus important to control GET and/or NOTIFY access to these objects and possibly to encrypt the values of these objects when sending them over the network via SNMP.

The support for SET operations in a non-secure environment without proper protection can have a negative effect on network operations. For example:

Unauthorized changes to the Energy Management Domain or business context of an Energy Object may result in misreporting or interruption of power.

Unauthorized changes to a power state may disrupt the power settings of the different Energy Objects, and therefore the state of functionality of the respective Energy Objects.

Unauthorized changes to the demand history may disrupt proper accounting of energy usage.

With respect to data transport, SNMP versions prior to SNMPv3 did not include adequate security. Even if the network itself is secure (for example, by using IPsec), there is still no secure control over who on the secure network is allowed to access and GET/SET (read/change/create/delete) the objects in these MIB modules.

It is recommended that implementers consider the security features as provided by the SNMPv3 framework (see [RFC3410], section 8), including full support for the SNMPv3 cryptographic mechanisms (for authentication and privacy).

Further, deployment of SNMP versions prior to SNMPv3 is not recommended. Instead, it is recommended to deploy SNMPv3 and to enable cryptographic security. It is then a customer/operator responsibility to ensure that the SNMP entity giving access to an instance of these MIB modules is properly configured to give access to the objects only to those principals (users) that have legitimate rights to GET or SET (change/create/delete) them.

9. IANA Considerations

9.1 IANA Registration of new Power State Set

This document specifies an initial set of Power State Sets. The list of these Power State Sets with their numeric identifiers is given in Section 4. IANA maintains the lists of Power State Sets.

New assignments for Power State Set are administered by IANA through Expert Review [RFC5226], i.e., review by one of a group of experts designated by an IETF Area Director. The group of experts MUST check the requested state for completeness and accuracy of the description. A pure vendor specific implementation of Power State Set shall not be adopted; since it would lead to proliferation of Power State Sets.

Power states in a Power State Set are limited to 255 distinct values. New Power State Set must be assigned the next available numeric identifier that is a multiple of 256.

9.1.1 IANA Registration of the IEEE1621 Power State Set

This document specifies a set of values for the IEEE1621 Power State Set [IEEE1621]. The list of these values with their identifiers is given in Section 4.6.2. IANA created a new registry for IEEE1621 Power State Set identifiers and filled it with the initial list of identifiers.

New assignments (or potentially deprecation) for the IEEE1621 Power State Set is administered by IANA through Expert Review [RFC5226], i.e., review by one of a group of experts designated by an IETF Area Director. The group of experts must check the requested state for completeness and accuracy of the description.

9.1.2 IANA Registration of the DMTF Power State Set

This document specifies a set of values for the DMTF Power State Set. The list of these values with their identifiers is given in Section 4. IANA has created a new registry for DMTF Power State Set identifiers and filled it with the initial list of identifiers

.

New assignments (or potentially deprecation) for the DMTF Power State Set is administered by IANA through Expert Review [RFC5226], i.e., review by one of a group of experts designated by an IETF Area Director. The group of experts must check the conformance with the DMTF standard [DMTF], on the top of checking for completeness and accuracy of the description.

9.1.3 IANA Registration of the EMAN Power State Set

This document specifies a set of values for the EMAN Power State Set. The list of these values with their identifiers is given in Section 4.6.4. IANA has created a new registry for EMAN Power State Set identifiers and filled it with the initial list of identifiers.

New assignments (or potentially deprecation) for the EMAN Power State Set is administered by IANA through Expert Review [RFC5226], i.e., review by one of a group of experts designated by an IETF Area Director. The group of experts must check the requested state for completeness and accuracy of the description.

9.1.4 Batteries Power State Set

Batteries have operational and administrative states that could be represented as a power state set. Since the work for battery management is parallel to this document, we are not proposing any Power State Sets for batteries at this time.

9.2 Updating the Registration of Existing Power State Sets

With the evolution of standards, over time, it may be important to deprecate some of the existing the Power State Sets, or to add or deprecate some Power States within a Power State Set.

The registrant shall publish an Internet-draft or an individual submission with the clear specification on deprecation of Power State Sets or Power States registered with IANA. The deprecation or addition shall be administered by IANA through Expert Review [RFC5226], i.e., review by one of a group of experts designated by an IETF Area Director. The process should also allow for a mechanism for cases where others have significant objections to claims on deprecation of a registration.

10. Acknowledgments

The authors would like to Michael Brown for improving the text dramatically, and Rolf Winter for his feedback. The award for the best feedback and reviews goes to Bill Mielke. Bruce Nordman helped a lot in the framework brainstorming with numerous conference calls and discussions. Finally, the authors would like to thank the EMAN chairs: Nevil Brownlee, Bruce Nordman, and Tom Nadeau.

11. References

Normative References

- [RFC2119] Bradner, S., "Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels", BCP 14, RFC 2119, March 1997
- [RFC3410] Case, J., Mundy, R., Partain, D., and B. Stewart, "Introduction and Applicability Statements for Internet Standard Management Framework ", RFC 3410, December 2002
- [RFC4122] Leach, P., Mealling, M., and R. Salz, " A Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) URN Namespace", RFC 4122, July 2005
- [RFC5226] Narten, T., and H. Alvestrand, "Guidelines for Writing an IANA Considerations Section in RFCs", RFC 5226, May 2008
- [RFC6933] Bierman, A. and K. McCloghrie, "Entity MIB (Version4)", RFC 6933, May 2013

Informative References

- [RFC2578] McCloghrie, K., Perkins, D., and J. Schoenwaelder, "Structure of Management Information Version 2 (SMIv2", RFC 2578, April 1999
- [RFC3444] Pras, A., Schoenwaelder, J. "On the Differences between Information Models and Data Models", RFC 3444, January 2003

- Internet-Draft <EMAN Framework> February 2013
- [RFC5101bis] Claise, B., Ed., and Trammell, T., Ed.,
"Specification of the IP Flow Information Export
(IPFIX) Protocol for the Exchange of IP Traffic Flow
Information ", draft-ietf-ipfix-protocol-rfc5101bis-
08, (work in progress), June 2013
- [RFC6020] M. Bjorklund, Ed., " YANG - A Data Modeling Language
for the Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF)",
RFC 6020, October 2010
- [ACPI] "Advanced Configuration and Power Interface
Specification", <http://www.acpi.info/spec30b.htm>
- [IEEE1621] "Standard for User Interface Elements in Power
Control of Electronic Devices Employed in
Office/Consumer Environments", IEEE 1621, December
2004
- [LLDP] IEEE Std 802.1AB, "Station and Media Control
Connectivity Discovery", 2005
- [LLDP-MED-MIB] ANSI/TIA-1057, "The LLDP Management
Information Base extension module for TIA-TR41.4
media endpoint discovery information", July 2005
- [EMAN-REQ] Quittek, J., Winter, R., Dietz, T., Claise, B., and
M. Chandramouli, "Requirements for Energy
Management", draft-ietf-eman-requirements-14, (work
in progress), May 2013
- [EMAN-OBJECT-MIB] Parello, J., and B. Claise, "Energy Object
Contet MIB", draft-ietf-eman-energy-aware-mib-08,
(work in progress), April 2013
- [EMAN-MON-MIB] Chandramouli, M., Schoening, B., Quittek, J.,
Dietz, T., and B. Claise, "Power and Energy
Monitoring MIB", draft-ietf-eman-energy-monitoring-
mib-05, (work in progress), April 2013
- [EMAN-BATTERY-MIB] Quittek, J., Winter, R., and T. Dietz, "
Definition of Managed Objects for Battery
Monitoring", draft-ietf-eman-battery-mib-08, (work in
progress), February 2013
- [EMAN-AS] Schoening, B., Chandramouli, M., and B. Nordman,
"Energy Management (EMAN) Applicability Statement",

- [ITU-T-M-3400] TMN recommendation on Management Functions
(M.3400), 1997
- [NMF] "Network Management Fundamentals", Alexander Clemm,
ISBN: 1-58720-137-2, 2007
- [TMN] "TMN Management Functions : Performance Management",
ITU-T M.3400
- [1037C] US Department of Commerce, Federal Standard 1037C,
<http://www.its.bldrdoc.gov/fs-1037/fs-1037c.htm>
- [IEEE100] "The Authoritative Dictionary of IEEE Standards
Terms"
[http://ieeexplore.ieee.org/xpl/mostRecentIssue.jsp?pu
number=4116785](http://ieeexplore.ieee.org/xpl/mostRecentIssue.jsp?pu number=4116785)
- [ISO50001] "ISO 50001:2011 Energy management systems -
Requirements with guidance for use",
<http://www.iso.org/>
- [IEC60050] International Electrotechnical Vocabulary
[http://www.electropedia.org/iev/iev.nsf/welcome?openf
orm](http://www.electropedia.org/iev/iev.nsf/welcome?openform)
- [IEEE-802.3at] IEEE 802.3 Working Group, "IEEE Std 802.3at-
2009 - IEEE Standard for Information technology -
Telecommunications and information exchange between
systems - Local and metropolitan area networks -
Specific requirements - Part 3: Carrier Sense
Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD)
Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications -
Amendment: Data Terminal Equipment (DTE) - Power via
Media Dependent Interface (MDI) Enhancements",
October 2009
- [DMTF] "Power State Management Profile DMTF DSP1027 Version
2.0" December 2009
[http://www.dmtf.org/sites/default/files/standards/doc
uments/DSP1027_2.0.0.pdf](http://www.dmtf.org/sites/default/files/standards/documents/DSP1027_2.0.0.pdf)
- [IPENERGY] R. Aldrich, J. Parello "IP-Enabled Energy
Management", 2010, Wiley Publishing

Internet-Draft <EMAN Framework> February 2013
[X.700] CCITT Recommendation X.700 (1992), Management
 framework for Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) for
 CCITT applications

[ASHRAE-201] "ASHRAE Standard Project Committee 201
 (SPC 201)Facility Smart Grid Information
 Model", <http://spc201.ashraepcs.org>

[CHEN] "The Entity-Relationship Model: Toward a Unified View
 of Data", Peter Pin-shan Chen, ACM Transactions on
 Database Systems, 1976

[CISCO-EW] "Cisco EnergyWise Design Guide", John Parello,
 Roland Saville, Steve Kramling, Cisco Validated
 Designs, September 2010,
 [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/
Borderless_Networks/Energy_Management/energywisedg.ht
ml](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Borderless_Networks/Energy_Management/energywisedg.html)

Authors' Addresses

Benoit Claise
Cisco Systems, Inc.
De Kleetlaan 6a b1
Diegem 1813
BE

Phone: +32 2 704 5622
Email: bclaise@cisco.com

John Parello
Cisco Systems, Inc.
3550 Cisco Way
San Jose, California 95134
US

Phone: +1 408 525 2339
Email: jparello@cisco.com

Brad Schoening
44 Rivers Edge Drive
Little Silver, NJ 07739
US

Internet-Draft <EMAN Framework>
Phone:
Email: brad.schoening@verizon.net

February 2013

Juergen Quittek
NEC Europe Ltd.
Network Laboratories
Kurfuersten-Anlage 36
69115 Heidelberg
Germany

Phone: +49 6221 90511 15
EMail: quittek@netlab.nec.de

Network Working Group
Internet-Draft
Intended status: Informational
Expires: August 29, 2013

S. Jeong
ETRI
February 25, 2013

Network Proxy Protocol
draft-jeong-eman-network-proxy-protocol-01.txt

Abstract

In the current Internet, it is implicitly assumed that a network node is always active so that it can receive the incoming packets at any time. Current networking services and applications are commonly designed to be fully available at all times with minimal response times. This assumption keeps network nodes from entering sleeping mode in order to reduce energy consumption. Further, during sleeping mode, network nodes may not immediately respond to the incoming packets or even lose them. If network nodes are allowed to go into a sleeping mode, they can effectively reduce energy consumption during idle period. Network proxy allows to delegate network node's traffic processing to an external system within a network, so that the nodes maintain network presence during their sleep. This document describes communication mechanism between network nodes and proxy in order to accelerate the wider deployment of network proxy mechanism.

Status of this Memo

This Internet-Draft is submitted in full conformance with the provisions of BCP 78 and BCP 79.

Internet-Drafts are working documents of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF). Note that other groups may also distribute working documents as Internet-Drafts. The list of current Internet-Drafts is at <http://datatracker.ietf.org/drafts/current/>.

Internet-Drafts are draft documents valid for a maximum of six months and may be updated, replaced, or obsoleted by other documents at any time. It is inappropriate to use Internet-Drafts as reference material or to cite them other than as "work in progress."

This Internet-Draft will expire on August 29, 2013.

Copyright Notice

Copyright (c) 2013 IETF Trust and the persons identified as the document authors. All rights reserved.

This document is subject to BCP 78 and the IETF Trust's Legal Provisions Relating to IETF Documents (<http://trustee.ietf.org/license-info>) in effect on the date of publication of this document. Please review these documents carefully, as they describe your rights and restrictions with respect to this document. Code Components extracted from this document must include Simplified BSD License text as described in Section 4.e of the Trust Legal Provisions and are provided without warranty as described in the Simplified BSD License.

Table of Contents

1. Introduction	3
2. Conventions and Terminology	5
3. Overview of Network Proxy	6
4. Network Proxy Operation	8
5. Message Formats	10
6. Security Considerations	15
7. IANA Considerations	16
8. References	17
8.1. Normative References	17
8.2. Informative References	17
Author's Address	19

1. Introduction

Information and Communications Technology (ICT) sector is facing rapid growth and consuming a lot of power in order to provide large bandwidth and complex application services.

According to an ITU-T report, wired and wireless networks consume large amount of power and the amount of green-house gas emissions caused by ICT sector is estimated 2% of total man-made emissions. It is also estimated that network sector including network equipment and equipment connected to networks contributes to 4% of world power consumption. Further, it is observed that the power consumption is higher at access networks and users, so how to reduce the power consumption in these areas is becoming an important issue [ITU].

According to recent surveys, network equipment show a constant power consumption profile irrespective of their utilization level, i.e., energy-agnostic power profile. Such equipment represent the worst case in terms of utilization and power consumption profile. On the contrary, ideally, energy-aware equipment represent power consumption pattern proportional to their utilization or offered load. Practical approaches for realizing the energy-aware equipment are implementing multi-stepped power profiles in order to adapt to the utilization level [EPC][GreenSurvey][EEE].

There is another research direction for improving energy efficiency of network equipment using network proxy technology [I-D.winter-energy-efficient-internet][PROXZZZY][NCP]. Network proxy describes technologies that maintain network connectivity for other devices so that these can go into low power sleep modes. This mainly targets the reduction of unnecessary energy waste through edge devices.

There are typically two types of network proxies: internal and external, respectively.

- o Internal Proxy: proxy functionality is implemented within the ICT product, such as network interface card.
- o External Proxy: proxy functionality is placed within other network equipment such as switch and external server in networks.

This document describes a protocol that is need for communication between external proxies and network hosts.

ECMA International has published a proxying document [PROXZZZY]. This specification describes an overall architecture for network proxying and provides capabilities that a proxy may expose to a host.

Also, information that must be exchanged between a host and a proxy, and required and optional behavior of a proxy during its operation are described.

Within IETF, there are several documents related with the functionality of network proxy [RFC6762][RFC6763][I-D.cheshire-edns0-owner-option]. These documents defines DNS messages-based service discovery mechanisms, which can be used for facilitating various services. These mechanisms may be used for providing some of network proxy functionality, but generalized network proxy functionality is not fully supported.

Generalized network proxy is capable of providing full network presence for a broad range of network protocols and applications. The generalized network proxy include a list of packet types that may require routine reply, autogeneration, and wakeup, as well as the detailed steps and methods for state information transfer each requires [EEEC].

It is well known that many network hosts are in active state in order to maintain network presence and this behavior hinders hosts from entering energy saving state. Even when a node is idle with no running applications, background traffic is received that needs to be processed which inhibits the node from sleeping. Network proxy is one of the possible solutions for resolve this issue. The general framework of network proxy was developed, but the control and communication mechanisms between network hosts and proxies has not been developed. Thus, in order to promote the wider deployment of network proxy mechanism, the control and communication protocol should be specified.

This document defines a control protocol for external network proxy operation and relevant messages in order to increase energy efficiency of network hosts.

2. Conventions and Terminology

The key words "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHALL", "SHALL NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119].

3. Overview of Network Proxy

Network proxy refers to a set of mechanisms dedicated to put network interfaces and network nodes into energy saving sleeping mode. Energy consumption in sleeping mode is less than active mode in general, so the longer the sleeping periods is, the higher the achievable energy saving can be. The network proxy enables network nodes to maintain network connectivity during sleep period. Figure 1 shows the typical operational scenario of network proxy [PROXZZZY]. When a host wants to enter sleeping mode, the host delivers its network status and state to a network proxy and goes into sleeping mode. Then, the network proxy responds to periodic messages on behalf of the host in sleeping mode. If the proxy receives a message that it cannot process, it sends a wake-up message to the host so that the host can process the message after wake-up.

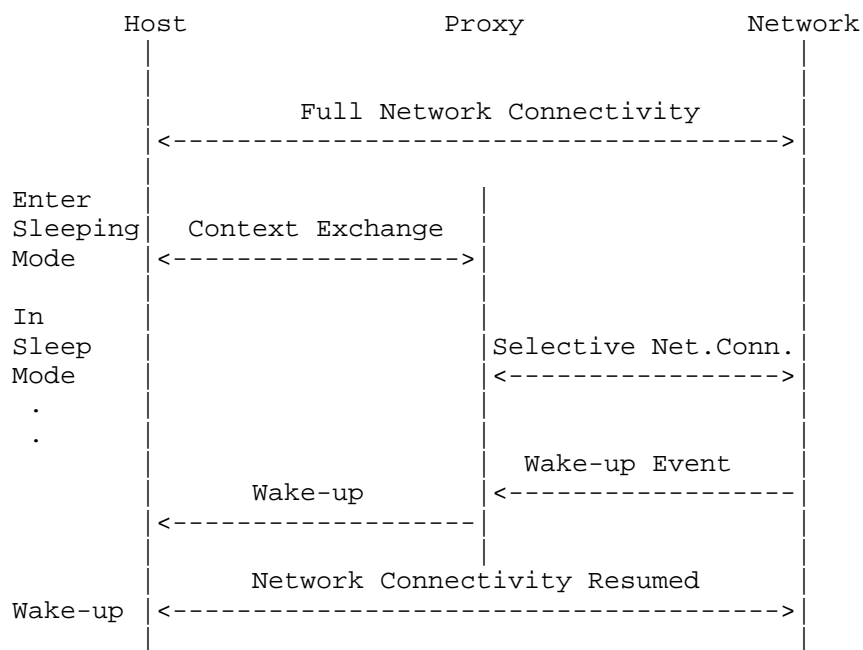


Figure 1: Operational scenario of network proxy

According to the survey, even though a host is in idle mode, background network traffic is received and needs to be processed, which prevents the host from going into sleeping mode. Also, it is known that most of the incoming traffic received during the host's idle period may be simply dropped or do not require more than a minimal computation and response. For instance, most broadcast packets or traffic related to port scanning may simply be ignored.

Usual exchanges, such as Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) processing, Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) echo answering or Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) rebinding, are simple tasks that could be easily performed directly by network proxy. The idea behind network proxy is delegating the processing of such traffic. Processing can imply plain filtering or may require simple responses (e.g., in the case of ARP, ICMP, DHCP), or even more complex task. Such tasks can be delegated from the CPUs of hosts to an external network proxy in networks [GreenSurvey].

The following list summarizes requirement status about what types of protocols network proxy should support [PROXZZZY]. Among them, this document describes ARP related operation first and other mandatory protocols will be defined later version of this document.

Mandatory 1: Media (802.3, 802.11)

Mandatory 2: IPv4 ARP

Mandatory 3: IPv6 Neighbor Discovery

Mandatory 4: Wake Packets

Option 1: DNS

Option 2: DHCP

Option 3: IGMP

Option 4: MLD

Option 5: Remote Access using SIP and IPv4

Option 6: Remote Access using Teredo for IPv6

Option 7: SNMP

Option 8: Service Discovery using mDNS

Option 9: Name Resolution with LLMNR

4. Network Proxy Operation

This section describes network proxy operation between proxy server and network nodes to support mandatory protocols. Figure 2 shows network proxy operations for IPv4 ARP. When a network host wants to enter sleeping mode in order to save energy, the host exchanges Proxy Solicitation and Advertisement messages with network proxy in network. Proxy may be implemented as a function within a switch or router, or it may be implemented as a separate server. Proxy Solicitation message queries to network, whether network proxy functionality can be supported within the host's network. If there is a network proxy that can provide proxy functionality, it replies to the host by using Proxy Advertisement message. Network proxy supports required functional behavior defined in [PROXZZZY] in order to support IPv4 ARP.

After the network proxy discovery procedure, the host sends Sleep Request message to network proxy. The Request message contains the host's MAC address(es) and IP address(es). After receiving the Sleep Confirm message from the network proxy, the host enters sleeping mode. Then the network proxy discards ARP Request messages sent from other hosts in the network. By doing so, the host can sleep without receiving or processing ARP broadcast message not destined to the node itself. If the network proxy receives an ARP request message for sleeping host, it sends a reply message on behalf of the sleeping hosts using the host's MAC and IP address. When the network proxy receives a packet that it cannot process, the proxy sends a Wake-up packet to the sleeping host in order to wake it up. During its wake-up process, proxy may buffer additional packets destined to the sleeping hosts. After the sleeping node wakes up it can communicate with remote hosts. When Sleep Timer expires, the sleeping host wakes up and sends a Wake-up Report message to the network proxy. Then, the network proxy cleans up the state information for the sleeping host and replies with Wake-up confirm message.

Note that Figure 2 shows network proxy operation for processing ARP messages and operation for other mandatory protocols specified in [PROXZZZY] will be defined later version of this document.

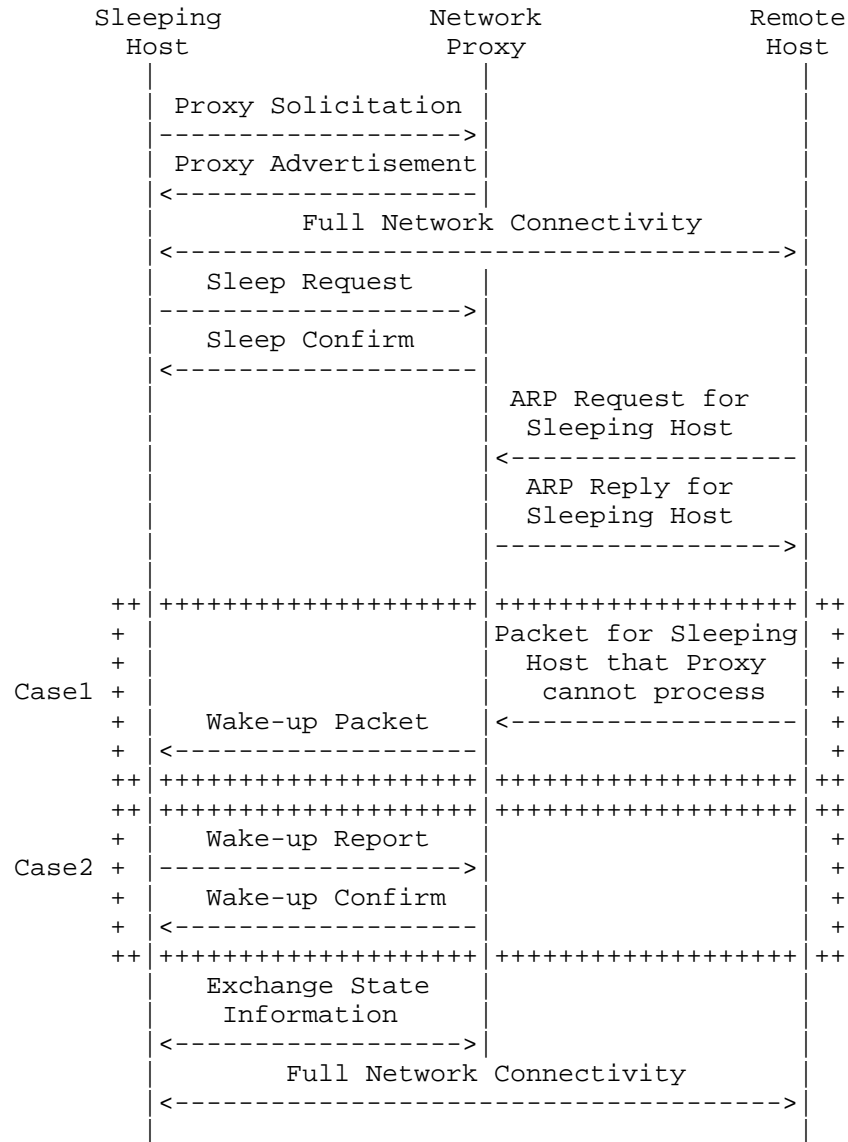


Figure 2: Network proxy operation for IPv4 ARP

5. Message Formats

Figure 3 depicts two types of new ICMP messages for Proxy Request/Reply messages. The messages are defined as follows.

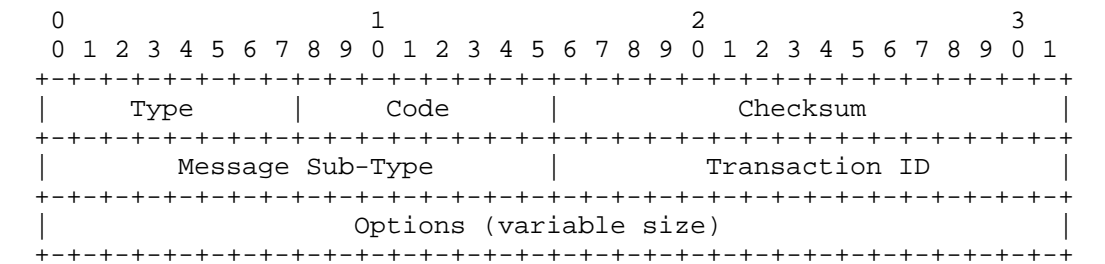


Figure 3: Proxy request message

Type	<TBD> (Proxy Request) <TBD> (Proxy Reply)
Code	0 Success 1 Fail
Checksum	The 16-bit one's complement of the one's complement sum of the ICMP message, starting with the ICMP Type.
Message Sub-Type	1 Proxy Solicitation Message 2 Proxy Advertisement Message 3 Sleep Request Message 4 Sleep Confirm Message 5 Wake-up Report Message 6 Wake-up Confirm Message
Transaction ID	Unique identifier created each time a host starts proxy operation
Options	Optional data for Sub-Type messages

Figure 4 shows the Option format for Sub-Type messages. The Option format is defined as a TLV format.

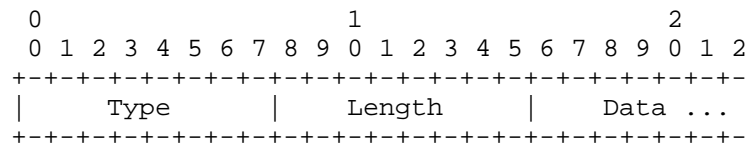


Figure 4: Option format

Type	Indicates the particular sub-type option. 1 Proxy Solicitation Option 2 Proxy Advertisement Option 3 Sleep Request Option 4 Sleep Confirm Option 5 Wake-up Report Option 6 Wake-up Confirm Option
Length	Indicates the length (in bytes) of the data field within this option. The length does not include the Type and Length bytes.
Data	The particular data associated with this option. This field may be zero or more bytes in length. The format and length of the data field is determined by the type and length fields.

Figure 5 depicts Option format of Proxy Solicitation Sub-Type message. The sub-type message is broadcasted in order to discover proxy in networks. It contains 2 bytes Identifier and 2 bytes sequence number. Currently the detail of Identifier has not been developed, but its format and allocation method will be determined later.

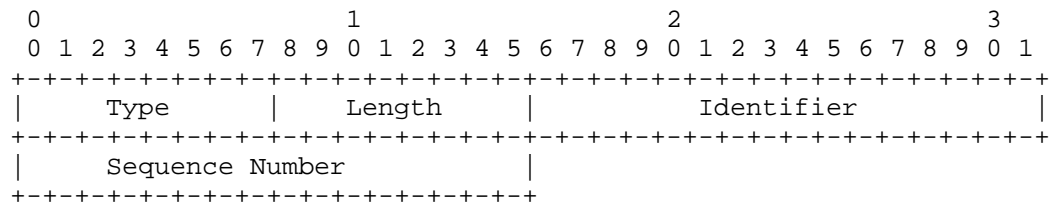


Figure 5: Proxy solicitation option

Figure 6 shows Option format for Proxy Advertisement Sub-Type message used for notifying the Proxy Server’s presence in network. It is periodically broadcasted to networks and unicasted to a network node

that sent a Proxy Solicitation message. The Advertisement message contains the address of Proxy Server's IP address(es) and Preference(s).

0										1										2										3									
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1								
Type										Length										Num. of Addr										Addr Entry Size									
Lifetime										Proxy Address 1																													
Proxy Address 1										Address Preference 1																													
Address Preference 1										Proxy Address 2																													
Proxy Address 2										Address Preference 2																													
Address Preference 2										...																													

Figure 6: Proxy advertisement option

Figure 7 shows Option format for Sleep Request Sub-Type message. The message is unicasted to Proxy Server and it informs the client's entering to sleep mode. Hardware Address Type indicates hardware address type of client. Protocol Type contains protocol address type. H/W length means the length of hardware address. Finally, number of addresses indicates the number of hardware and protocol pairs.

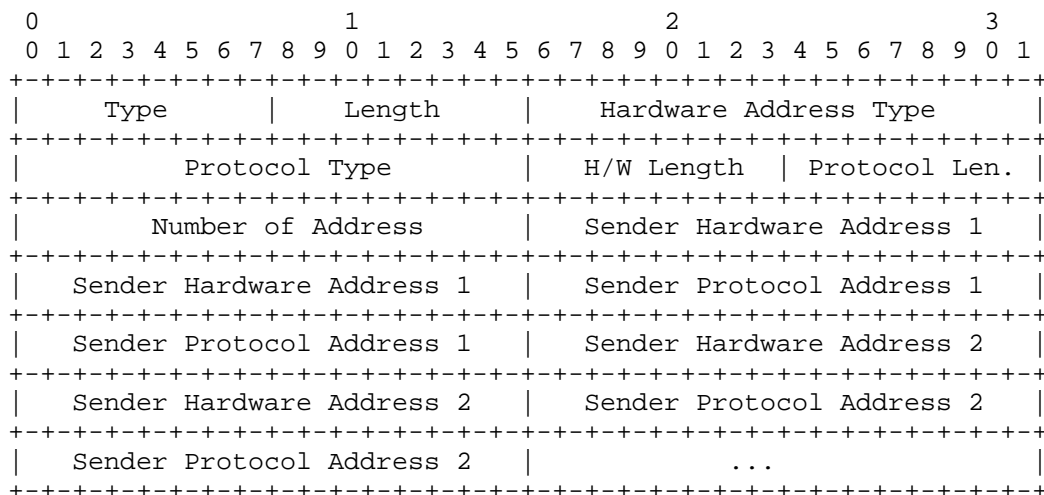


Figure 7: Sleep request option

Figure 8 describes Option format for Sleep Confirm Sub-Type message that is sent from a Proxy Server to Client as a response of Sleep Request message. Code indicates the result of Sleep Request operation. 0 indicates success and 1 indicates failure. Client Identifier is a unique ID for identifying Client and will be allocated by Proxy Server.

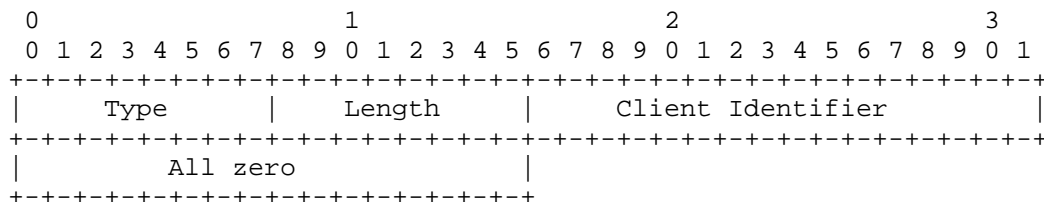


Figure 8: Sleep confirm option

Figure 9 depicts Option format for Wake-up report message. It is sent by a client to Proxy Server in order to notify the wake-up event of the client. It is unicasted to the Proxy Server. Client Identifier is the same Identifier assigned by Sleep Confirm message.

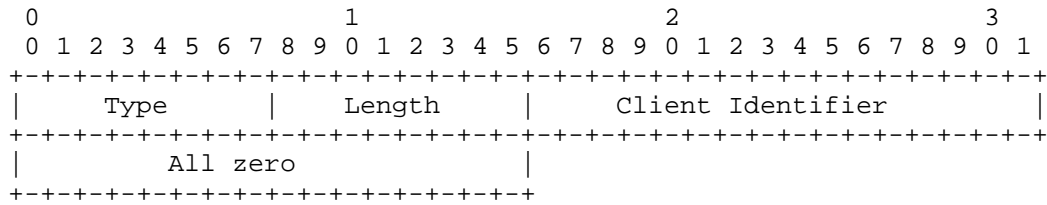


Figure 9: Wake-up report option

Figure 10 shows Option format for Wake-up Confirm message. It is unicasted to a Client as a reply of the Client's Wake-up Report message. Code 0 means success and 1 means failure. Client Identifier is the same Identifier assigned by Sleep Confirm message.

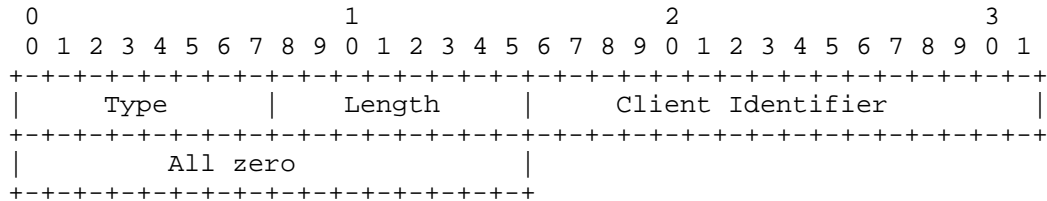


Figure 10: Wake-up confirm option

6. Security Considerations

[TBD]

7. IANA Considerations

[TBD]

8. References

8.1. Normative References

- [RFC2119] Bradner, S., "Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels", BCP 14, RFC 2119, March 1997.

8.2. Informative References

- [EEE] "802.3az-2010", IEEE std , 2010.
- [EEEC] Nordman, B. and K. Christensen, "Improving the Energy Efficiency of Ethernet-Connected: A Proposal for Proxying", Ethernet Alliance , September 2007.
- [EPC] Barroso, L. and U. Holzle, "The Case for Energy-Proportional Computing", Proc. IEEE International Conference on Network Protocols (ICNP) , December 2007.
- [GreenSurvey] Bianzino, A., Chaudet, C., Rossi, D., and J. Rougier, "A survey of green networking research", IEEE Communications Surveys Tutorials , 2012.
- [I-D.cheshire-edns0-owner-option] Cheshire, S. and M. Krochmal, "EDNS0 OWNER Option", draft-cheshire-edns0-owner-option-00 (work in progress), July 2009.
- [I-D.winter-energy-efficient-internet] Winter, R., Jeong, S., and J. Choi, "Towards an Energy-Efficient Internet", draft-winter-energy-efficient-internet-01 (work in progress), October 2012.
- [ITU] "Resolution 73 - Information and communication technologies and climate change", October 2008.
- [NCP] Jimeno, M., Christensen, K., and B. Nordman, "A Network Connection Proxy to Enable Hosts to Sleep and Save Energy", Proc. IEEE Internat. Performance Computing and Communications Conf , 2008.
- [PROXZZZY] "ProxZZZy for sleeping hosts", ECMA International ECMA-393, June 2012.
- [RFC6762] Cheshire, S. and M. Krochmal, "Multicast DNS", RFC 6762,

February 2013.

- [RFC6763] Cheshire, S. and M. Krochmal, "DNS-Based Service Discovery", RFC 6763, February 2013.
- [SKILL] Nedevschi, S., Liu, J., Nordman, B., Ratnasamy, S., and N. Taft, "Skilled in the Art of Being Idle: Reducing Energy Waste in Networked Systems", Proc. USENIX Symposium on Networked Systems Design and Implementation , 2009.

Author's Address

Sangjin Jeong
ETRI
218 Gajeongno, Yuseong
Daejeon, 305-700
Korea

Phone: +82 42 860 1877
Email: sjjeong@etri.re.kr

Network Working Group

Internet-Draft

Intended Status: Informational

Expires: September 21, 2013

J. Parello

Cisco Systems, Inc.

April 23, 2013

Energy Management Terminology
draft-parello-eman-definitions-08

Status of this Memo

This Internet-Draft is submitted to IETF in full conformance with the provisions of BCP 78 and BCP 79.

Internet-Drafts are working documents of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), its areas, and its working groups. Note that other groups may also distribute working documents as Internet-Drafts.

Internet-Drafts are draft documents valid for a maximum of six months and may be updated, replaced, or obsoleted by other documents at any time. It is inappropriate to use Internet-Drafts as reference material or to cite them other than as "work in progress."

The list of current Internet-Drafts can be accessed at <http://www.ietf.org/ietf/lid-abstracts.txt>

The list of Internet-Draft Shadow Directories can be accessed at <http://www.ietf.org/shadow.html>

This Internet-Draft will expire on September 12, 2013.

Copyright Notice

Copyright (c) 2013 IETF Trust and the persons identified as the document authors. All rights reserved.

This document is subject to BCP 78 and the IETF Trust's Legal Provisions Relating to IETF Documents (<http://trustee.ietf.org/license-info>) in effect on the date of publication of this document. Please review these documents carefully, as they describe your rights and restrictions with respect to this document. Code Components extracted from this document must include Simplified BSD License text as described in Section 4.e of the Trust Legal Provisions

Internet-Draft <draft-pareello-eman-definitions> Mar 2013

and are provided without warranty as described in the
Simplified BSD License.

Abstract

This document contains definitions and terms used in the Energy Management Working Group. Each term contains a definition(s), example, and reference to a normative, informative or well know source. Terms originating in this draft should be either composed of or adapted from other terms in the draft with a source. The defined terms will then be used in other drafts as defined here.

Table of Contents

1. Introduction.....	4
2. Terminology.....	5
Device.....	5
Component.....	5
Energy Management.....	5
Energy Management System (EnMS).....	6
ISO Energy Management System.....	7
Energy.....	7
Power.....	7
Demand.....	7
Power Characteristics.....	8
Power Quality.....	8
Electrical Equipment.....	9
Non-Electrical Equipment (Mechanical Equipment).....	9
Energy Object.....	9
Electrical Energy Object.....	9
Non-Electrical Energy Object.....	9
Energy Monitoring.....	10
Energy Control.....	10
Provide Energy:.....	10
Receive Energy:.....	10
Power Interface.....	11
Power Inlet.....	11
Power Outlet.....	11
Energy Management Domain.....	11
Energy Object Identification.....	12
Energy Object Context.....	12
Energy Object Relationship.....	12
Aggregation Relationship.....	13
Metering Relationship.....	13
Power Source Relationship.....	13
Proxy Relationship.....	14
Energy Object Parent.....	14
Energy Object Child.....	14
Power State.....	15
Power State Set.....	15
Nameplate Power.....	15
3. Security Considerations.....	16
4. IANA Considerations.....	16
5. Acknowledgments.....	16
6. References.....	16
Normative References.....	16
Informative References.....	16
7. Authors' Addresses.....	17

1. Introduction

Within Energy Management there are terms that may seem obvious to a casual reader but in fact require a rigorous and sourced definition. To avoid any confusion in terms among the working group drafts, one glossary / lexicon of terms should exist that all drafts can refer to. This will avoid a review of terms multiplied across drafts.

This draft will contain a glossary of definitions of terms that can be agreed upon by the working group outside of the context of drafts and then included in or sourced to this draft.

Each term will contain a definition(s), a normative or informative reference, an optional example, an optional comment(s) listed a note(s).

All terms should be rooted with a well-known reference. If a definition is taken verbatim from a reference then the source is listed in square brackets. If a definition is derived from a well-known reference then the source is listed as "Adapted from" with the reference listed in square brackets. If a defined term is newly defined here the reference will indicate as such by stating "herein" and if applicable list any composing terms from this document.

When applicable the [IEEE100] was used as the preferred source. If a term was not available from [IEEE100], then [IEC60050] was used. When these were multiple items from [IEEE100], [IEC60050] or [ISO50001], there were all included.

2. Terminology

Device

A piece of electrical or non-electrical equipment.

Reference: Adapted from [IEEE100]

Component

A part of an electrical or non-electrical equipment (Device).

Reference: Adapted from [ITU-T-M-3400]

Energy Management

Energy Management is a set of functions for measuring, modeling, planning, and optimizing networks to ensure that the network elements and attached devices use energy efficiently and is appropriate for the nature of the application and the cost constraints of the organization.

Reference: Adapted from [ITU-T-M-3400]

Example: A set of computer systems that will poll electrical meters and store the readings

NOTES:

1. Energy management refers to the activities, methods, procedures and tools that pertain to measuring, modeling, planning, controlling and optimizing the use of energy in networked systems [NMF].
2. Energy Management is a management domain which is congruent to any of FCAPS areas of management in the ISO/OSI Network Management Model [TMN]. Energy Management for communication networks and attached

devices is a subset or part of an organization's greater Energy Management Policies.

Energy Management System (EnMS)

An Energy Management System is a combination of hardware and software used to administer a network with the primary purpose being Energy Management.

Reference: Adapted from [1037C]

Example: A single computer system that polls data from devices using SNMP

NOTES:

1. An Energy Management System according to [ISO50001] (ISO-EnMS) is a set of systems or procedures upon which organizations can develop and implement an energy policy, set targets, action plans and take into account legal requirements related to energy use. An EnMS allows organizations to improve energy performance and demonstrate conformity to requirements, standards, and/or legal requirements.
2. Example ISO-EnMS: Company A defines a set of policies and procedures indicating there should exist multiple computerized systems that will poll energy from their meters and pricing / source data from their local utility. Company A specifies that their CFO should collect information and summarize it quarterly to be sent to an accounting firm to produce carbon accounting reporting as required by their local government.
3. For the purposes of EMAN, the definition from [1037C] is the preferred meaning of an Energy Management System (EnMS). The definition from [ISO50001] can be referred to as ISO Energy Management System (ISO-EnMS).

ISO Energy Management System

Energy Management System as defined by [ISO50001]

Reference: herein

Energy

That which does work or is capable of doing work. As used by electric utilities, it is generally a reference to electrical energy and is measured in kilo-watt hours (kWh).

Reference: [IEEE100]

NOTES

1. Energy is the capacity of a system to produce external activity or perform work [ISO50001]

Power

The time rate at which energy is emitted, transferred, or received; usually expressed in watts (or in joules per second).

Reference: [IEEE100]

Demand

The average value of power or a related quantity over a specified interval of time. Note: Demand is expressed in kilowatts, kilovolt-amperes, kilovars, or other suitable units.

Reference: [IEEE100]

NOTES:

1. typically kilowatts

2. Energy providers typically bill by Demand measurements as well as for maximum Demand per billing periods. Power values may spike during short-terms by devices, but Demand measurements recognize that maximum Demand does not equal maximum Power during an interval.

Power Characteristics

Measurements of the electrical current, voltage and frequencies at a given point in an electrical power system.

Reference: Adapted from [IEC60050]

NOTES:

1. Power Characteristics is not intended to be judgmental with respect to a reference or technical value and are independent of any usage context.

Power Quality

Characteristics of the electric current, voltage and frequencies at a given point in an electric power system, evaluated against a set of reference technical parameters. These parameters might, in some cases, relate to the compatibility between electricity supplied in an electric power system and the loads connected to that electric power system.

Reference: [IEC60050]

NOTES:

1. Electrical characteristics representing power quality information are typically required by customer facility energy management systems. It is not intended to satisfy the detailed requirements of power quality monitoring. Standards typically also give ranges of allowed values; the information attributes are the raw measurements, not the "yes/no" determination by the various standards.

Reference: [ASHRAE-201]

Electrical Equipment

A general term including materials, fittings, devices, appliances, fixtures, apparatus, machines, etc., used as a part of, or in connection with, an electric installation.

Reference: [IEEE100]

Non-Electrical Equipment (Mechanical Equipment)

A general term including materials, fittings, devices, appliances, fixtures, apparatus, machines, etc., used as a part of, or in connection with, non-electrical power installations.

Reference: Adapted from [IEEE100]

Energy Object

An Energy Object (EO) is a piece of equipment that is part of or attached to a communications network that is monitored, controlled, or aids in the management of another device for Energy Management.

Reference: herein

Electrical Energy Object

An Electrical Energy Object (EEO) is an Energy Object that is a piece of Electrical Equipment

Reference: herein, Electrical Equipment

Non-Electrical Energy Object

A Non-Electrical Energy Object (NEEO) an Energy Object that is a piece of Non-Electrical Equipment.

Reference: herein, Non-Electrical Equipment.

Energy Monitoring

Energy Monitoring is a part of Energy Management that deals with collecting or reading information from Energy Objects to aid in Energy Management.

Reference: herein

NOTES:

1. This could include Energy, Power, Demand, Power Quality, Context and/or Battery information.

Energy Control

Energy Control is a part of Energy Management that deals with directing influence over Energy Objects.

Reference: herein

NOTES:

1. Typically in order to optimize or ensure its efficiency.

Provide Energy:

An Energy Object "provides" energy to another Energy Object if there is an energy flow from this Energy Object to the other one.

Reference: herein

Receive Energy:

An Energy Object "receives" energy from another Energy Object if there is an energy flow from the other Energy Object to this one.

Reference: herein

Power Interface

A Power Interface (or simply interface) is an interconnection among devices or components where energy can be provided, received or both.

Reference: herein

Power Inlet

A Power Inlet (or simply inlet) is an interface at which a device or component receives energy from another device or component.

Reference: herein

Power Outlet

A Power Outlet (or simply outlet) is an interface at which a device or component provides energy to another device or component.

Reference: herein

Energy Management Domain

An Energy Management Domain is a set of Energy Objects where all objects in the domain are considered one unit of management.

Reference: herein

Example: All EEO's drawing power from the same distribution panel with the same AC voltage within a building, or all EEO's in a building for which there is one main meter, would comprise an Energy Management Domain.

NOTES:

1. Typically, this set will have as members all EO's that are powered from the same source.

Energy Object Identification

Energy Object Identification is a set of attributes that enable an Energy Object to be: uniquely identified among all Energy Management Domains; linked to other systems; classified as to type, model, and or manufacturer.

Reference: herein

Energy Object Context

Energy Object Context is a set of attributes that allow an Energy Management System to classify the use of the Energy Object within an organization.

Reference: herein

NOTES:

1. The classification could contain the use and/or the ranking of the Energy Object as compared to other Energy Objects in the Energy Management Domain.

Energy Object Relationship

An Energy Object Relationship is a functional association among Energy Objects

NOTES

1. Relationships can be named and could include Aggregation, Metering, Power Source, and Proxy.
2. The Energy Object is the noun or entity in the relationship with the relationship described as the verb.

Example: If EO x is a piece of Electrical Equipment and EO y is an electrical meter clamped onto x's power cord, then x and y have a Metering Relationship. It follows that y meters x and that x is metered by y.

Reference: Adapted from [CHEN]

Aggregation Relationship

An Aggregation Relationship is an Energy Object Relationship where one Energy Object aggregates the Energy Management information of one or more other Energy Objects.
These Energy Objects are referred to as having an Aggregation Relationship.

Reference: herein

NOTES:

1. Aggregate values may be obtained by reading values from multiple Energy Objects and producing a single value of more significant meaning such as average, count, maximum, median, minimum, mode and most commonly sum [SQL].

Metering Relationship

A Metering Relationship is an Energy Object Relationship where one Energy Object measures the Power or Energy of one or more other Energy Objects.

These Energy Objects are referred to as having a Metering Relationship.

Reference: herein

Example: a PoE port on a switch measures the Power it provides to the connected Energy Object.

Power Source Relationship

A Power Source Relationship is an Energy Object Relationship where one Energy Object is the source of or distributor of Power to one or more other Energy Objects.

These Energy Objects are referred to as having a Power Source Relationship.

Reference: herein

Example: a PDU provides power for a connected device.

Proxy Relationship

A Proxy Relationship is an Energy Object Relationship where one Energy Object provides the Energy Management capabilities on behalf of one or more other Energy Objects.

These Energy Objects are referred to as having a Proxy Relationship.

Reference: herein

Example: a protocol gateways device for Building Management Systems (BMS) with subtended devices.

Energy Object Parent

An Energy Object Parent is an Energy Object that participates in an Energy Object Relationship and is considered as providing the capabilities in the relationship.

Example: in a Metering Relationship, the Energy Object that is metering is called the Energy Object Parent, while the Energy Object that is metered is called the Energy Object Child.

Reference: herein

Energy Object Child

An Energy Object Child is an Energy Object that participates in an Energy Object Relationship and is considered as receiving the capabilities in the relationship.

Example: in a Metering Relationship, the Energy Object that is metering is called the Energy Object Parent, while the Energy Object that is metered is called the Energy Object Child.

Reference: herein

Power State

A Power State is a condition or mode of a device that broadly characterizes its capabilities, power consumption, and responsiveness to input.

Reference: Adapted from [IEEE1621]

NOTES:

1. A Power State can be seen as a power setting of an Energy Object that influences the power consumption, the available functionality, and the responsiveness of the Energy Object.
2. A Power State can be viewed as one method for Energy Control

Power State Set

A collection of Power States that comprise one named or logical grouping of control is a Power State Set.

Reference: herein

Example: The states {on, off, and sleep} as defined in [IEEE1621], or the 16 power states as defined by the [DMTF] can be considered two different Power State Sets.

Nameplate Power

The Nameplate Power is the nominal Power of a Device as specified by the Device manufacturer.

Reference: herein

NOTES:

1. This is typically determined via load testing and is specified by the manufacturer as the maximum value required for operating the device. This is sometimes referred to as the worst-case Power. The actual or average Power may be lower. The Nameplate Power is typically used for provisioning and capacity planning.

3. Security Considerations

None

4. IANA Considerations

None

5. Acknowledgments

The author would like to thank the authors of the current working group drafts for the discussions and definition clarifications

6. References

Normative References

Informative References

[IEEE100] "The Authoritative Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms"
<http://ieeexplore.ieee.org/xpl/mostRecentIssue.jsp?number=4116785>

[IEEE1621] "Standard for User Interface Elements in Power Control of Electronic Devices Employed in Office/Consumer Environments", IEEE 1621, December 2004.

Internet-Draft <draft-pareello-eman-definitions> Mar 2013

- [IEC60050] International Electrotechnical Vocabulary
<http://www.electropedia.org/iev/iev.nsf/welcome?openform>
- [ISO50001] "ISO 50001:2011 Energy management systems - Requirements with guidance for use",
<http://www.iso.org/>
- [DMTF] "Power State Management Profile DMTF DSP1027 Version 2.0" December 2009
http://www.dmtf.org/sites/default/files/standards/documents/DSP1027_2.0.0.pdf
- [TMN] "TMN Management Functions : Performance Management", ITU-T M.3400
- [NMF] "Network Management Fundamentals", Alexander Clemm, ISBN: 1-58720-137-2, 2007
- [ITU-T-M-3400] TMN recommendation on Management Functions (M.3400), 1997
- [CHEN] "The Entity-Relationship Model: Toward a Unified View of Data", Peter Pin-shan Chen, ACM Transactions on Database Systems, 1976
- [1037C] US Department of Commerce, Federal Standard 1037C, <http://www.its.bldrdoc.gov/fs-1037/fs-1037c.htm>
- [SQL] ISO/IEC 9075(1-4,9-11,13,14):2008
- [ASHRAE-201] "ASHRAE Standard Project Committee 201 (SPC 201)Facility Smart Grid Information Model", <http://spc201.ashraepcs.org>

7. Authors' Addresses

John Parello
Cisco Systems, Inc.
3550 Cisco Way
San Jose, California 95134
US

Phone: +1 408 525 2339
Email: jparello@cisco.com